

**SOI: 1.1/TAS**

**DOI: 10.15863/TAS**

**Scopus ASJC: 1000**

**ISSN 2308-4944 (print)**

**ISSN 2409-0085 (online)**

**№ 07 (123) 2023**

**Teoretičeskaâ i prikladnaâ nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied Science**



---

**Philadelphia, USA**

**Teoretičkaâ i prikladnaâ  
nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied  
Science**

**07 (123)**

**2023**

# International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

Founder: **International Academy of Theoretical & Applied Sciences**

Published since 2013 year. Issued Monthly.

International scientific journal «Theoretical & Applied Science», registered in France, and indexed more than 45 international scientific bases.

Editorial office: <http://T-Science.org> Phone: +777727-606-81

E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

Hirsch index:

**Editor-in Chief: Alexandr Shevtsov**

**h Index RISC = 1 (78)**

## Editorial Board:

1	Prof.	Vladimir Kestelman	USA	<b>h Index Scopus = 3 (47)</b>
2	Prof.	Arne Jönsson	Sweden	<b>h Index Scopus = 10 (33)</b>
3	Prof.	Sagat Zhunisbekov	KZ	-
4	Assistant of Prof.	Boselin Prabhu	India	-
5	Lecturer	Denis Chemezov	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 2 (61)</b>
6	Associate Prof.	Elnur Hasanov	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = 8 (11)</b>
7	Associate Prof.	Christo Ananth	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
8	Prof.	Shafa Aliyev	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
9	Associate Prof.	Ramesh Kumar	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (2)</b>
10	Associate Prof.	S. Sathish	India	<b>h Index Scopus = 2 (13)</b>
11	Researcher	Rohit Kumar Verma	India	-
12	Prof.	Kerem Shixaliyev	Azerbaijan	-
13	Associate Prof.	Ananeva Elena Pavlovna	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 1 (19)</b>
14	Associate Prof.	Muhammad Hussein Noure Elahi	Iran	-
15	Assistant of Prof.	Tamar Shiukashvili	Georgia	-
16	Prof.	Said Abdullaevich Salekhov	Russia	-
17	Prof.	Vladimir Timofeevich Prokhorov	Russia	-
18	Researcher	Bobir Ortikmirzayevich Tursunov	Uzbekistan	-
19	Associate Prof.	Victor Aleksandrovich Melent'ev	Russia	-
20	Prof.	Manuchar Shishinashvili	Georgia	-
21	Prof.	Konstantin Kurpayanidi	Uzbekistan	<b>h Index RISC = 8 (67)</b>
22	Prof.	Shoumarov G'ayrat Bahramovich	Uzbekistan	-
23	Associate Prof.	Saidvali Yusupov	Uzbekistan	-
24	PhD	Tengiz Magradze	Georgia	-
25		Dilnoza Azlarova	Uzbekistan	-
26	Associate Prof.	Sanjar Goyipnazarov	Uzbekistan	-
27	Prof.	Shakhlo Ergasheva	Uzbekistan	-
28	Prof.	Nigora Safarova	Uzbekistan	-
29	Associate Prof.	Kurbonov Tohir Hamdamovich	Uzbekistan	-
30	Prof.	Pakhrutdinov Shukritdin Il'yasovich	Uzbekistan	-

# International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

---

## Editorial Board:

Hirsch index:

31	PhD	Mamazhonov Akramzhon Turgunovich	Uzbekistan	-
32	PhD	Ravindra Bhardwaj	USA	<b>h Index Scopus = 2 (5)</b>
33	Assistant lecturer	Mehrinigor Akhmedova	Uzbekistan	-
34	Associate Prof.	Fayziyeva Makhbuba Rakhimjanovna	Uzbekistan	-
35	PhD	Jamshid Jalilov	Uzbekistan	-
36		Guzalbegim Rakhimova	Uzbekistan	-
37	Prof.	Gulchehra Gaffarova	Uzbekistan	-
38	Prof.	Manana Garibashvili	Georgia	
39	D.Sc.	Alijon Karimovich Khusanov	Uzbekistan	
40	PhD	Azizkhon Rakhmonov	Uzbekistan	
41	Prof.	Sarvinoz Kadirova	Uzbekistan	
42	Prof., D.Sc.	Shermukhamedov Abbas Tairovich	Uzbekistan	
43	PhD	Bekjanova Ainura	Uzbekistan	
44		Anzhelika Bayakina	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 3 (18)</b>
45	PhD	Abdurasul Martazayev	Uzbekistan	
46	PhD	Ia Shiukashvili	Georgia	
47	Associate Prof.	Lali Elanidze	Georgia	<b>h Index Scopus = 0 (1)</b>
48		Maka Kochauri	Georgia	

**International Scientific Journal  
Theoretical & Applied Science**

---



ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, 07 (123), 300.  
Philadelphia, USA



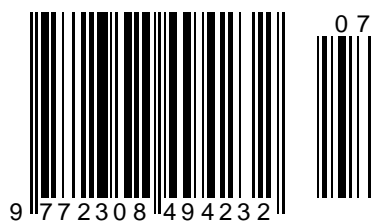
**Impact Factor ICV = 6.630**

**Impact Factor ISI = 0.829**  
based on International Citation Report (ICR)

The percentage of rejected articles:



ISSN 2308-4944



© Collective of Authors  
© «Theoretical & Applied Science»

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 14.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



Doniyor Eldorovich Mamurov  
Fergana Polytechnic Institute  
PhD degree applicant  
[g7777@mail.ru](mailto:g7777@mail.ru)

## TO THE PROBLEM OF SELECTING METHODS OF INNOVATION ACTIVITY SUPPORT

**Abstract:** This article considers advanced methods of innovation activity support. Innovation is the main driving factor of economic development in the modern world, so the creation of effective tools to support and stimulate innovation is becoming more and more relevant. The article analyses various approaches to the organisation of national innovation infrastructure, including the creation of a unified database of innovation projects and potential investors, the use of state order to organise R&D, and the formation of public use centres with unique scientific and technical equipment. It also considers measures to simplify procedures for obtaining grants and technical support funds for innovative projects, the creation of an effective system of intellectual property protection, the provision of state guarantees for loans, and the inclusion of innovative tasks in economic and social development programmes. In addition, the article analyses the role of technoparks, free economic zones, small industrial zones and research and production clusters in creating competitive hubs for the development and implementation of advanced technologies. Important attention is paid to the development of private organisations in the field of expertise of innovative projects and the creation of centres for technical cooperation and technology transfer. The discussion and analysis of the application of these methods leads to the conclusion that it is necessary to develop comprehensive measures to effectively support innovation, attract investment and create a favourable innovation climate capable of stimulating economic growth and achieving the country's strategic development goals.

**Key words:** State support, dynamically progressing countries, innovative ideas, innovative developments, innovative technologies, methods of state support, science and technology, national economy, reforms, and innovation process.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Mamurov, D. E. (2023). To the problem of selecting methods of innovation activity support. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 101-106.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-14> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.14>

**Scopus ASCC:** 1400.

### Introduction

УДК 316.422.

In the modern world, innovation plays a key role in achieving economic growth, sustainable development and improving the competitiveness of the country. Therefore, the creation and development of innovation support system becomes an indispensable factor in the development of the national economy. In the context of globalisation and rapidly changing technological landscape, it is necessary to constantly improve the tools and methods of innovation support to ensure the successful

implementation of innovation projects and attract investment.

The aim of this article is to explore best practices in innovation support and their role in achieving positive innovation outcomes. Different approaches to the organisation of national innovation infrastructure will be considered, as well as measures aimed at simplifying the procedures for obtaining grants and financial support for innovative projects.

An important aspect of the article will be an analysis of the role of technoparks, free economic zones, small industrial zones and research and production clusters in creating a favourable innovation climate. Special attention will be paid to

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

the role of private organisations in the field of expertise of innovative projects and the establishment of technical cooperation and technology transfer centres.

Discussions and analyses of best practices in innovation support will contribute to identifying optimal recommendations and solutions for innovation development. The proposed approaches and recommendations can be used by public and private organisations to create an effective system of innovation support, stimulate economic growth and achieve the country's strategic development goals.

The organisation of advanced methods of innovation support is an essential condition for creating a favourable innovation climate and stimulating the effective use of innovation for the progress of society. The introduction and development of these methods may well become the basis for achieving national strategic goals and turning the country into an innovation leader.

### Degree of development of the problem.

The degree of development of the problem for the research article on "Best Practices in Supporting Innovation: Uzbekistan and World Experience" can be assessed as follows:

Level of development of the problem in Uzbekistan: The search for suitable information on best practices to support innovation activities in Uzbekistan may be limited, as the topic is relatively new in the context of the country. However, in recent years Uzbekistan has been actively seeking to develop the innovation sector and attract investment in this area. Research and publications on this topic may be limited in Uzbekistan, but they are likely to have started to appear with the increased interest in innovation.

International experience: Globally, the issue of best practices in supporting innovation is well researched. Many countries are actively engaged in the development and implementation of innovation programmes, research and strategies. There are organisations, institutes and publications around the world dedicated to the topic. Often these studies include analyses of global best practices on various aspects of innovation, such as legal and financial mechanisms, public policies, different models and forms of support, successful practices, etc.

In general, we can say that the topic "Best Practices in Supporting Innovation: Uzbekistan and World Experience" is relevant and interesting, especially in the context of rapid development of Uzbekistan and its aspiration to become one of the leading states of world civilisation. However, a more in-depth study of this topic may require a more thorough collection of data on best practices in supporting innovation in Uzbekistan. Analyses of global experience and best practices from different countries could form the basis for formulating

recommendations and developing further strategies to support innovation in Uzbekistan.

Works of foreign scientists such as P. F. Drucker, J. Clark, R. Solow, K. Freeman, J. Schumpeter, F. Hayek, R. Harrod discussed theoretical and methodological foundations of innovative development of industrial enterprises. F. Aghion, R. Atkinson, E. Beinhocker, W. Baumol, P. Krugman, R. Lipsey, M. Mandel, E. Mansfield, R. Nelson, D. Odretsch, P. Romer, R. Solow, F. Hayek, E. Helpman, P. Hyatt, J. Schumpeter are the founders of the modern approach to the analysis of innovation. Scientists from CIS countries, such as O.N. Antipina, L.M. Gokhberg, S.D. Ilyenkova, G.I. Morozova, A.A. Porokhovskiy, A.I. Prigozhin, S.N. Silvestrov, E.A. Utkin, N.L. Frolova, Y.V. Yakovets, made a significant contribution to the study of innovation economy, conceptualisation of the term "innovation" and classification of its components. Also D. Acemoglu, B. Van Pottelsberg, D. Van Reenen, J. Varda, N. Varsakelisa, D. Gullek, A. Goolsby, F. Jamotte, H. Capron, S. Lah, R. Levin, N. Payne, P. Segerström, O. Tovanen, M. Falk, D. Harhoff, B. Hall, A. Huutinen discuss issues related to the system of state stimulation and support of innovation. In the Republic of Uzbekistan, R. Alimov, S.C. Gulyamov, N.K. Zakirova, M.A. Ikramov, A.F. Rasulev, D.V. Trostyansky and other domestic authors deal with the problems of innovation economy.

### Research methodology.

For this article a variety of qualitative analytical methods, methods of expert evaluations, scientific review, abstract-logical thinking, comparative analysis, as well as methods of induction and deduction were applied. Reliable statistical data provided by the Ministry of Economy and Finance of the Republic of Uzbekistan and the Statistical Agency under the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan were used in the research process. In addition, appropriate secondary sources of information were used in the work.

### Analysis and results.

Many developed and dynamic economies have adopted a variety of approaches and mechanisms to stimulate innovation in the small private business (SPB) sector. There are public programmes for financing and technical support for innovative development of MSEs, which are implemented by governmental organisations. Moreover, there are many regulatory, financial, fiscal and property instruments at the state and regional levels to foster innovation in all business sectors.

In the course of our analysis it was revealed that in the world practice different countries use a variety of forms of stimulating innovation activity of small business entities. These forms include:

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

Provision of credit resources, including interest-free loans and grants to cover up to 50 per cent of the costs of innovation in countries such as Sweden and Germany.

Direct financing to support the development of new products and technologies, up to 50 per cent of costs, in countries including France and the US.

Establishment of favourable state duties and fiscal preferences for individual inventors, as well as special infrastructure and economic insurance in countries such as Austria, Germany, the USA, Japan.

Development of state targeted programmes of financial and technical support for innovative CDM engaged in R&D carried out by governmental organisations in countries including USA, Japan, UK, India, China.

Provision of R&D grants in all developed countries.

Establishment of venture capital funds to invest in innovative projects of small businesses in all economically developed and dynamically developing countries.

Establishment of funds for commercialisation of innovations taking into account possible commercial risk in countries such as England, Germany, France, Switzerland.

Adoption of regulations to protect intellectual property and copyrights in all developed countries.

Provision of fee deferral or exemption for energy saving inventions made in Austria.

Free patent attorney services and fee waivers for individual inventors in countries such as the Netherlands, Germany, Japan and India.

Simplified taxation for enterprises engaged in innovation, including exclusion of R&D costs from taxation, favourable taxation of educational institutions and research institutes in countries such as the USA, UK, India, China, Japan.

Information and search specialised websites on progressive technologies and innovative developments, facilitating quick access for interested enterprises to the necessary technical solutions and potential partners.

Promotion of international co-operation and collaboration in the field of innovation through the development of partnerships between small enterprises from different countries, knowledge exchange and technology transfer.

Implementation of trainings and educational programmes aimed at developing innovative skills and entrepreneurial thinking among owners and employees of small enterprises.

Recognising and rewarding innovative achievements of small businesses in order to create a culture of innovation and motivation for further development.

Encouraging open innovation and co-operation between small businesses and research institutes, universities and other key innovation stakeholders.

Promoting sustainable development and green innovation by providing incentives, grants and tax breaks to small businesses that develop and implement environmentally friendly technologies and practices.

These are just some of the typical forms of incentivising innovation in small businesses found in global practice. Each country may use different approaches based on its needs, resources and policy priorities.

The analysis of the innovation situation in Uzbekistan requires some updates. The cluster approach, based on close interaction between large and small businesses, government, research and higher education institutions, is actively used to shape national industrial policy in the design of regional development programmes and to stimulate innovation.

The experience of advanced and developing countries has shown that the cluster approach serves as a basis for rational and effective interaction between the private sector, the State, research and higher education institutions in the innovation process.

Recognising the need to build economic capacity, governments of developed and dynamically developing countries invest heavily in research and development (R&D). However, according to the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's UNESCO Institute for Statistics (2017) Ranking of the World's Countries by Level of R&D Expenditure, Uzbekistan spends only about 0.1 per cent of GDP on R&D. While countries such as Israel, South Korea, Japan, the United States and China invest much more, between 2.1 per cent and 4.3 per cent of GDP.

The low level of financing of innovation in Uzbekistan may lead to a lag in science and technology and, consequently, in socio-economic development. This situation is primarily caused by the absence of a state S&T policy, confirmed by practical actions at all levels of legislative and executive power. In addition, Uzbekistan has not yet developed a competitive market of free capital interested in venture capital investment in small innovative enterprises. We believe that the development of venture financing is hindered by underdeveloped legal support for various aspects of investment support for innovation activities, poor interaction between developers and investors, and the lack of a developed venture financing infrastructure (venture funds, expert and consulting services, patenting and intellectual property protection system, etc.).

### Conclusion.

Based on the arguments presented above, the following are among the main challenges that require the primary development of mechanisms for state regulation of innovation in Uzbekistan:



## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHII (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

Strengthening efforts to promote alternative forms of lending for large innovation projects (e.g. SBIR (Small Business Innovation Research Programme - a US government programme) and STTR (Small Business Technology Transfer Programme)).

Development of a well-founded state S&T policy for the perspective period until 2030, identification of strategic priorities of innovative development and provision of resources for them.

Significant increase of public expenditure on R&D and achievement of 3 per cent of GDP by 2024.

Creation of specialised institutions to finance innovation activities.

Simplification of procedures and requirements for obtaining a bank loan to stimulate innovative development of the country.

Improving the microfinance system for innovative development.

Encourage private sector participation in defining and financing S&T development priorities.

Creation of a constantly updated unified database of innovative projects and potential investors.

Active introduction of a mechanism for organising R&D through a state order on a programme-targeted basis using project management methods.

Creation of public use centres with unique scientific and technical equipment.

Formation of competitive hubs of technoparks, free economic zones, free industrial zones, small industrial zones and research and production clusters for the development and implementation of advanced technologies.

Simplification of procedures and increased transparency in obtaining and using grants and technical support funds for innovative projects.

Creation of an effective state system of intellectual property protection and mechanisms to counteract the production and sale of counterfeit and counterfeit products.

Provision of state guarantees for loans attracted to the innovation sector. Inclusion of innovative tasks in the main programmes of economic and social development at the state and municipal levels.

Development of state programmes for the purchase of R&D results and knowledge-intensive products from innovative small enterprises.

Development and certification of predictive methods for assessing the efficiency of innovation programmes and projects, taking into account the world experience of venture financing.

Facilitating the creation of effective centres for technical cooperation and technology transfer for small businesses at universities and research centres.

Promoting the development of private organisations in the sphere of expertise of innovative projects.

Creation of a competitive environment that promotes the transition of the economy to an innovative path of development and efficient use of resources.

Development of corporate law and introduction of modern principles of corporate governance, taking into account international experience.

Formation of a competitive market that will stimulate economic growth and transition to innovative development, as well as increase the efficiency of resource utilisation.

Improvement of anti-monopolisation policy, including the use of public-private partnerships, ensuring non-discriminatory access to goods, services and works provided by natural monopolies for all legal entities and individuals, as well as the introduction of effective pricing mechanisms for the products of monopoly enterprises.

Creation of equal conditions for entrepreneurial activity and prevention of monopolisation in the domestic market.

In conclusion, it should be noted that the development of an effective national infrastructure to support innovation activity is one of the critical factors for the further scientific, technical and economic development of the Republic of Uzbekistan. It will also create favourable conditions for the development of innovation in the era of the formation of a global digital economy.

The importance of such an infrastructure lies in its ability to provide solid support for research and development, facilitate the commercialisation of innovations, provide access to the necessary resources and funding, and provide innovative enterprises with a comfortable environment for growth and success.

Promoting policies that foster such infrastructure requires cooperation between government, academic and research organisations, the private sector and the public. It is important to develop and implement mechanisms for financing and evaluating the effectiveness of innovation projects, provide access to advanced technologies and equipment, and create platforms for the exchange of knowledge and experience.

Successful development of the innovation infrastructure will allow Uzbekistan to become a leader in science, technology and innovation, attract foreign investment, create highly skilled jobs and sustainable economic growth. As a result, improved innovation will contribute to achieving national development goals and making Uzbekistan a strong and competitive nation in the international arena.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

## References:

1. Abe, H., Ashiki, T., Suzuki, A., Jinno, F., & Sakuma, H. (2009). Integrating business modeling and roadmapping methods-The Innovation Support Technology (IST) approach. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 76(1), 80-90.
2. Ahmad, M., Jiang, P., Majeed, A., Umar, M., Khan, Z., & Muhammad, S. (2020). The dynamic impact of natural resources, technological innovations and economic growth on ecological footprint: an advanced panel data estimation. *Resources Policy*, 69, 101817.
3. Ashurov, M., Kurpayanidi, K., Oripov, D., Shakirova, Y., & Muydinova, G. (2023). Strategies for Improvement and Evaluation of the Quality Management System of Uzbekistan Manufacturers. In: Beskopylny, A., Shamtsyan, M., Artiukh, V. (eds) XV International Scientific Conference "INTERAGROMASH 2022". INTERAGROMASH 2022. *Lecture Notes in Networks and Systems*, vol 574. Springer, Cham. [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-21432-5\\_167](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-21432-5_167)
4. Dragone, G., Kerssemakers, A. A., Driessen, J. L., Yamakawa, C. K., Brumano, L. P., & Mussatto, S. I. (2020). Innovation and strategic orientations for the development of advanced biorefineries. *Bioresource Technology*, 302, 122847.
5. Jumaniyazov, I. T., & Hazratov, B. (2022). Foreign experience in the development of special economic zones in Uzbekistan. *Science and Education*, 3(5), 1628-1636.
6. Kurpayanidi, K. (2022). Institutional conditions for the development of entrepreneurship in the context of the transformation of the national economy. *Economic Innovations*, 24(3(84)), 67-76. [https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.31520/ei.2022.24.3\(84\).67-76](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.31520/ei.2022.24.3(84).67-76)
7. Kurpayanidi, K. (2022). *SMART marketing - as an activator of the "promotion" paradigm in the development of professional competencies of marketers. Toshkent molija instituti*. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7423715>
8. Kurpayanidi, K. (2022). *Tehnologija SMART-marketing v razvitii professional'nyh kompetencij marketologov. Samarqand Iqtisodiyot Va Servis Instituti*. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7437192>
9. Kurpayanidi, K. (2022). *Entrepreneurship in the context of institutional transformation of the economy*. Fergana: OOO "Al-Ferganus".
10. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2019). Theoretical basis of management of innovative activity of industrial corporation. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 01 (69), 7-14. Doi: <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.01.69.3>
11. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2020). Corporate industry analysis of the effectiveness of entrepreneurship subjects in the conditions of innovative activity. *Jekonomika i biznes: teorija i praktika*, (2-1).
12. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2020). On the problem of macroeconomic analysis and forecasting of the economy. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 03 (83), 1-6. Doi: <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2020.03.83.1>
13. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2020). To the problem of doing business in the conditions of the digital economy. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 9(89), 1-7.
14. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2021). Financial and economic mechanism and its role in the development of entrepreneurship. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, (1), 1-7. <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2021.01.93.1>
15. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2022). Integration of innovation and information and communication technologies as a source of economic transformation. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 10 (114), 1-6.
16. Kurpayanidi, K. I. (2022). Institutional conditions for the development of entrepreneurship in the context of the transformation of the national economy. *Scientific and analytical journal Science and Practice of the Plekhanov Russian University of Economics*, Vol. 14, No. 4(48), pp. 103-116.
17. Kurpayanidi, K. I., & Mamurov, D. E. (2022). *Management of innovative activities of business entities in industry: AL-FERGANUS*, 2022, 200 p, ISBN 978-9943-7707-3-7, DOI 10.5281/zenodo.6475830
18. Mamurov, D.E. (2020). Review analysis of the factors of increasing the innovative activity of entrepreneurship in the industrial sector of industry. *South Asian Journal of Marketing & Management Research*, 10(8), 17-32.
19. Mamurov, D. (2019). Features of the Support of the Innovative Activity: Foreign Experience and Practice for Uzbekistan. *Bulleten` nauki i praktiki*. T. 5. №11, pp. 255-261. <https://doi.org/10.33619/2414-2948/48/29>

**Impact Factor:**

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

20. Mikhaylov, A.B. (2022). *Rol` i znachenie klasterov v jekonomike Uzbekistana*. All-Russian Scientific Conference with international participation «Modern science and education: topical issues of theory and practice» [Electronic resource]: collection of conference materials: in 2 vol. / editor-in-chief. M. T. Tekueva; Kabardino-Balkarian State University named after H. M. Berbekov. Electronic text data, Nalchik: KBGU, 2022, Vol. II. p. 12-17. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.8105345>
21. (2023). *Scenarios for the development of the economy of Uzbekistan in the conditions of instability of the world economy*/ K. Kurpajanidi, A. Abdullaev. E3S Web of Conferences: International Scientific Conference “Fundamental and Applied Scientific Research in the Development of Agriculture in the Far East” AFE-2022, Volume 371, 2023. Article Number 05016 Number of page(s) 8. Section Environmental Economics and Management. Published online 28 February 2023. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.1051/e3sconf/202337105016>
22. Umarhodjaeva, M. G. (2020). *Issues of using the world experience of an effective corporate governance organization under the conditions of Uzbekistan*. In *Korporativnoe upravlenie i novye biznes-modeli: poisk mehanizmov soglasovannogo razvitiya* (pp. 113-117).
23. Vaz, E., de Noronha Vaz, T., Galindo, P. V., & Nijkamp, P. (2014). Modelling innovation support systems for regional development-analysis of cluster structures in innovation in Portugal. *Entrepreneurship & Regional Development*, 26 (1-2), 23-46.
24. Kurpajanidi, K. (2023). Nekotorye osobennosti metodologii issledovaniya institucional`noj srede malyh promyshlennyh predpriyatij. Izhimoiy-gumanitar fanlarning dolzarb muammolari / Aktual`nye problemy social`no-gumanitarnyh nauk / *Actual Problems of Humanities and Social Sciences.*, 3(4), 21-34. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.47390/A1342V3I4Y2023N03>
25. Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2021). Sovremennye koncepcii i modeli razvitiya predprinimatel`stva. *Bulleten` nauki i praktiki*. 7( 9), pp. 425-444, Doi: <https://doi.org/10.33619/2414-2948/70/40>
26. Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2022). Innovacionnaja dejatel`nost` v retrospektive jekonomicheskoy nauki. *Jekonomika. Biznes. Finansy*. 7, S. 3-11.
27. (2022). Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2022). K voprosam metodologicheskikh podhodov issledovaniya institucional`noj srede malogo predprinimatel`stva. *Bulleten` nauki i praktiki*. 8(9), pp.442-460. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.33619/2414-2948/82/50>
28. Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2022). Teoreticheskie aspekty razvitiya predprinimatel`stva. *Jekonomika i biznes: teorija i praktika*. 3-1(85), pp. 186-188, Doi: <https://doi.org/10.24412/2411-0450-2022-3-1-186-188>
29. Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2022). *Voprosy upravleniya innovacijami i innovacionnoj dejatel`nost`u v uslovijah transformacii jekonomiki*. (p.280). Fergana: AL-FERGANUS, ISBN 978-9943-8579-2-6, DOI 10.5281/zenodo.7220693.
30. Kurpajanidi, K. I. (2022). *Osnovy jekonomicheskix znanij: Uchebnik*. Fergana: AL-FERGANUS.
31. Kurpajanidi, K.I. (2022). Voprosy razrabotki strategii investicionnoj politiki v uslovijah institucional`noj transformacii. *Nazariy va amaliy tadqiqotlar xalqaro jurnali*, 2 (3), 7-23. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.6503328>
32. Kurpajanidi, K.I. (2022). Voprosy sovershenstvovaniya organizacionno-jekonomicheskogo mehanizma razvitiya chastnogo predprinimatel`stva. *Horazm Ma#mun Akademijasi Ahborotnomasi - Vestnik Horezmskoj Akademii Ma#muna*, 1(85), 89-93. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.5940010>
33. Kurpajanidi, K.I. (2022). Teoreticheskie aspekty razvitiya predprinimatel`stva. *Jekonomika i biznes: teorija i praktika*, 3 (85). Doi: <https://doi.org/10.24412/2411-0450-2022-3-1-186-188>
34. Kurpajanidi, K.I. (2022). Faktory i napravleniya razvitiya institutov v sfere malogo predprinimatel`stva. *Problemy sovremennoj jekonomiki*, 3 (83).
35. Kurpajanidi, K.I. (2022). Cifrovaja transformacija kak perspektivnoe napravlenie razvitiya promyshlennosti Uzbekistana. *Jekonomika i biznes: teorija i praktika-Economy and Business: Theory and Practice*, vol. 9 (91). pp.120-124, ISSN 2411-0450. Doi: 10.24412/2411-0450-2022-9-120-123 <http://economyandbusiness.ru/wp-content/uploads/2022/10/Ekonomika-i-biznes-9.pdf>
36. Mamurov, D. (2021). Innovacionnaja sistema predpriyatija kak osnova modernizacii sovremennoj promyshlennoj korporacii. *Obshhestvo i innovacii*, 2(4/S), 322-328. Doi: <https://doi.org/10.47689/2181-1415-vol2-iss4/S-pp322-328>
37. Rasulev, A. F., & Trostjanskij, D. V. (2011). Razvitie innovacionnoj dejatel`nosti nacional`noj jekonomiki v postkrisisnyj period. *Jekonomika i finansy (Uzbekistan)*, (1).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 16.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



Abdurrokhmon Boydadaev  
National University of Uzbekistan  
PhD Student

## IRRATIONAL PHILOSOPHY IN THE CONTEXT OF THE SYNTHESIS OF EAST AND WEST

**Abstract:** This article examines irrational philosophy in the context of the synthesis of East and West with a focus on the philosophy of Nietzsche, Bergson, Sri Aurobindo and Rumi. In the modern world, where views and cultural traditions are mixed, it is important to understand how these philosophers make their unique contribution to the dialogue between East and West. The author concludes about the importance of irrational philosophy in the synthesis of East and West and how the philosophy of Nietzsche, Bergson, Sri Aurobindo and Rumi offers new approaches to understanding reality and the deeper aspects of being. These philosophers stimulate intellectual and cultural dialogue, promote mutual understanding and inspire the development of a harmonious synthesis of East and West.

**Key words:** philosophy, irrationalism, pantheism, mysticism, religion, culture, civilization, society.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Boydadaev, A. (2023). Irrational philosophy in the context of the synthesis of east and west. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 107-111.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-15> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.15>  
**Scopus ASCC:** 3300.

### Introduction

In the history of philosophy, a special place is occupied by such a trend as irrationalism, since it is the factor through which the integration of various cultures of the East and West is possible. And here the comparative approach occupies an important place, since it reveals not only the opposite of the two civilizations, but also their similarities [1, p.71]. The concept of irrationality in philosophy usually refers to concepts that defy logical analysis or rational explanation. These can be things like intuitive understanding, mystical or transcendental states. Eastern philosophies, especially Buddhism and Taoism, often focus on direct experience, intuition and inner insight, which can be considered irrational from the point of view of Western standards. The synthesis of East and West is an attempt to combine the best aspects of both philosophical traditions and create a new synthetic philosophy that can take into account both rational and irrational aspects of human nature [2, p.160]. In this process, irrational philosophy becomes an important tool for exploring deep aspects of human experience that cannot always be fully explained by rational methods.

### Materials and methods

The research base of this study consisted of the works of such thinkers as H.Bergson [3], F.Nietzsche [4], Sri Aurobindo [5], J.Rumiy [6] and others, as well as the scientific developments of such researchers as R.Karimov [7], G.Kabulnyiazova [8], I.Blauberg [9], J.Kavaloski [10] and others.

Methods such as comparative analysis, hermeneutics, system and structural analysis, as well as deduction and induction were used in the study.

### Results and analysis

Eastern philosophy has a rich history of irrational concepts that play an important role in the synthesis of East and West. For example, Buddhism pays great attention to meditation and direct experience to achieve enlightenment [2, p.162]. Practices such as Zen meditation call for overcoming logical thinking and achieving a direct intuitive understanding of reality. Another example is Taoism, which strives for harmony with nature and emphasizes the need to let go of control and understanding of the world through intuition and the natural flow of things.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

There are also irrational elements in Western philosophy that can be synthesized with Eastern traditions. For example, some philosophers of Romanticism, such as Friedrich Schiller and William Blake, emphasized the importance of intuition, emotion and imagination. They believed that a true understanding of the world requires freedom from rational analysis and the involvement of the whole being.

Nietzsche's philosophy traces the criticism of rationalism and his assertion that reason is not the only source of knowledge. He rejects the idea of a comprehensive objective truth and argues that each individual has a subjective perspective, which is limited by his own experience and feelings [4, p.120].

Nietzsche emphasizes the importance of intuition and emotions in the process of cognition. He argues that truth can be achieved not only through rational thinking and analysis, but also through intuitive understanding and emotional experience. He highlights the role of instincts and vital forces in shaping our values and worldview.

The concept of "will to power" in Nietzsche's philosophy also has an irrationalist connotation. He believes that the main driving force of human behavior is the will, which manifests itself in the desire for power, self-affirmation and achievement of one's goals [4, p.330]. This will be not always subordinated to rational or moral principles, and may be irrational and even destructive.

Nietzsche also contrasts the "Apollonian" and "Dionysian" principles in art and culture. The Apollonian principle represents rationality, measure, harmony, while the Dionysian principle is associated with emotionality, intuitiveness and irrationality. He believed that true art should combine both principles in order to express the full depth of human experience.

So, in Nietzsche's philosophy, irrationalism acts as a critique of rationalism, calling to see the role of intuition, emotions and individual experience in cognition and understanding of the world. He emphasizes the importance of intuitive understanding, emotional experience and will in shaping our values and behavior.

Bergson also criticizes the rationalist tradition, which strives for an objective and abstract knowledge of the world. He argues that rational thinking, focused on analysis and classification, limits our understanding of reality. Bergson offers an irrationalist alternative based on intuitive understanding and emotional experience.

The central concept of Bergson's philosophy is the concept of "duration" (*durée*). He argues that duration is a basic aspect of reality that cannot be fully grasped or expressed by rational concepts [3, p.157]. Duration is an immediate, organic and immeasurable experience of time, which cannot be decomposed into individual moments.

Bergson also emphasizes the role of intuition in cognition [3, p.160]. He believes that true understanding arises through intuitive insight into the essence of things, and not through rational analysis. Intuition allows us to feel the living flow of reality and gain a direct understanding of the unity and variability of the world.

An important theme in Bergson's philosophy is also the opposition between intelligence and instinct. He believes that intelligence, striving for static categories and concepts, limits our understanding of the world. On the other hand, instinct is a living force that allows us to connect with duration and manifest in action.

In general, irrationalism in Bergson's philosophy is expressed in his statement about the role of intuition, emotions and direct experience in cognition and understanding of reality. He calls for overcoming rational thinking and opening up for a more direct and organic contact with the world. It is important to note the similarities and differences between Nietzsche's and Bergson's irrationalism. Thus, for Nietzsche, the concept of "will to power" plays an important role in his philosophy. He emphasizes the emotional and irrational nature of the will, which can be destructive and lead to conflicts. At the same time, Bergson focuses on understanding instinct, which is associated with organic vitality and the ability to connect with duration. Nietzsche sees consciousness as an illusion generated by power and society. He calls for overcoming consciousness and discovering deeper aspects of being. Bergson considers consciousness as a tool of cognition, which can be expanded through intuition and direct experience. Nietzsche and Bergson have different approaches to understanding art. Nietzsche sees art as a way to overcome suffering and express the deepest aspects of human nature. Bergson believes that art is able to capture duration and express the organic nature of time.

In general, the irrationalism of Nietzsche and Bergson has some similarities, such as criticism of rationalism and the assertion of the role of intuition in cognition. However, they also have differences in the understanding of will, consciousness and art.

Indian philosophy has a long and rich tradition, in which there are elements of irrationalism. Indian philosophy pays attention to intuition, mystical experience and understanding of reality, which go beyond rational thinking. In Hinduism, for example, there are irrational concepts such as "Maya" (illusory world), "Atman" (inner self) and "Brahman" (absolute reality). These concepts cannot always be fully explained or understood by rational means and require intuitive understanding and self-awareness. Buddhism also has an irrational philosophy based on the concept of "emptiness" (*shunyata*). Emptiness indicates that all phenomena are devoid of a permanent and independent essence, and requires direct intuitive understanding through meditation and mindfulness.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

These concepts bring Indian and Western irrationalism together in some way. An important place in irrational Indian philosophy is occupied by the concept of Sri Aurobindo, who recognized the importance of intuition, inner understanding and spiritual experience in cognition and understanding of the world. He developed the concept of "supramental" consciousness, which is the highest level of awareness and insight into the deep realities of being [5, p.320]. Supramental consciousness cannot be fully described or understood by rational means, it requires direct experience and realization through spiritual practices and transformation.

Aurobindo also attached importance to the evolution of consciousness and its transformation. He saw spiritual development as a process in which intuition and mystical experience lead to the transformation of human nature and unity with the highest spiritual ideal.

Irrationalism in Indian philosophy and in Sri Aurobindo's philosophy is manifested in the attention paid to intuition, spiritual experience and understanding that goes beyond rational thinking. They call for direct inner experience and self-realization in the process of awareness and transformation. It should be noted that irrationalism in Sri Aurobindo's philosophy has similarities with Bergson's teaching in the following aspects:

1. The concepts of time and duration. Both Bergson and Aurobindo pay special attention to the understanding of time and its duration. Both philosophers reject the static understanding of time and emphasize its organic, changeable and dynamic nature. They call for an awareness of the continuous flow of time and an understanding of its cyclical nature.

2. The role of intuition and individual experience. Bergson and Aurobindo attach importance to intuition, emotional experience and individual understanding in cognition and understanding of the world. They claim that true understanding arises through intuitive insight and direct experience that goes beyond rational analysis.

3. Criticism of rationalism. Both philosophers criticize rationalism and its assertion of an all-encompassing objective truth. They believe that rational thinking limits our understanding and insight into the deeper aspects of reality. They call for overcoming rational thinking and opening up for more direct and organic contact with the world.

4. Fight against static categories. Both philosophers oppose the use of static categories and concepts in the knowledge of the world. They emphasize the living and changing nature of reality and call for overcoming static thinking in order to better understand the organic and dynamic aspects of being.

Although Bergson and Aurobindo have similarities in their philosophies, it should be noted

that they also have unique features and differences in their ideas and approaches to philosophy. They develop their own concepts and conceptual frameworks based on their unique intellectual and spiritual experiences.

In addition to Indian philosophy, one should also turn to the analysis of irrationalism in Sufism. For example, the philosophy of Jalaladdin Rumi, also known as Mevlana, has certain elements of irrationalism. Rumi was a Persian poet, mystic and philosopher whose works contain deep irrational and mystical aspects.

The main aspect of Rumi's philosophy is the idea of unity and love, which permeates all reality. He calls for overcoming duality and separation and for comprehending the deep unified reality, which he calls "One Being" or "God" [4, p.98]. This unified Being goes beyond rational understanding and requires direct intuitive experience and mystical fusion. In Rumi's philosophy, important importance is also given to the ideas of self-denial, humility and immersion in mystical knowledge. He calls for letting go of ego and individuality, and merging with the Divine. He sees love as a force capable of overcoming the boundaries of rationality and leading to mystical communion with the Divine. Rumi's philosophy also contains the use of metaphors, symbols and poetic language to express the deep irrational and mystical aspects of reality. His poetry is filled with emotions, inner insight and symbolism, which cannot always be logically explained or understood.

So, irrationalism in the philosophy of Jalaladdin Rumi manifests itself in the importance given to intuitive understanding, mystical experience and symbolism. He calls for overcoming rational thinking and opening up to the deepest and only aspects of being through love and mystical cognition. At the same time, most of all, Rumi's irrational philosophy is close to Henri Bergson's intuitionism in the following aspects:

1. The meaning of intuition and mystical experience. Both Rumi and Bergson attach importance to intuitive understanding and mystical experience in cognition and understanding of reality. They both argue that true understanding arises not only through rational analysis, but also through intuitive insight and direct experience.

2. Opposition to static categories. Both Rumi and Bergson oppose the use of static categories and concepts in the cognition of the world. They emphasize the organic and changeable nature of reality and call for overcoming static thinking in order to better understand the dynamic aspects of being.

3. Concepts of time and duration: Both Rumi and Bergson pay attention to time and its duration. They reject the static understanding of time and emphasize its organic, changeable and dynamic nature. They call for awareness of the continuous flow of time and its cyclicity.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

4. Criticism of rationalism. Both Rumi and Bergson criticize rationalism and its assertion of an all-encompassing objective truth. They believe that rational thinking limits our understanding and insight into the deeper aspects of reality. They call for overcoming rational thinking and opening up for more direct and organic contact with the world.

Although the philosophies of Jalaladdin Rumi, Henri Bergson and Sri Aurobindo belong to different traditions and eras, they all contain elements of irrationalism and emphasize the importance of intuition, mystical experience and direct understanding. All three philosophies oppose the limitations of rational thinking and strive to overcome dualism and unite with the deeper aspects of being. They also focus on the meaning of time and its organic, changeable nature. The rejection of static categories and concepts is another similarity between these philosophies, which makes it possible to better understand the dynamic aspects of reality. However, it should be noted that each of these philosophers has their own and unique ideas and concepts developed in their own contexts and based on their individual experiences. Irrationalism in their philosophies is expressed in different ways and serves different purposes.

In general, irrationalism in the philosophy of Rumi, Bergson and Aurobindo helps to emphasize the importance of intuition, mystical experience and direct understanding in achieving a deep understanding of reality and overcoming the limitations of rational thinking.

Nietzsche, Bergson, Sri Aurobindo and Rumi play an important role in philosophical comparative studies, which deals with the comparative study of philosophical systems and ideas of different cultures and traditions. These philosophers represent different cultural and intellectual contexts and make their unique contribution to the philosophical dialogue between East and West.

Nietzsche's role in philosophical comparative studies lies in his critical approach to Western rationality and commitment to understanding subjectivity and multiple interpretations. His works, such as "Thus spoke Zarathustra", stimulate research related to the opposition of Western and Eastern concepts, and introduce new ideas into philosophical discussion.

Bergson contributes to philosophical comparative studies through his understanding of

duration, time, and intuition. His philosophy encourages research related to the understanding of time in different cultures and the comparison of various forms of intuitive understanding and mystical experience.

Sri Aurobindo offers his unique philosophy based on the synthesis of Eastern and Western ideas, and contributes to philosophical comparative studies through his understanding of the evolution of consciousness and spiritual transformation. His works stimulate research related to the integration of various philosophical traditions and the search for harmony between them.

Rumi, as a Persian poet and philosopher, contributes to philosophical comparative studies through his mystical irrational philosophy of love and unity. His works stimulate research related to the comparison of mystical traditions of different cultures and their influence on philosophical discourse.

### Conclusion

The philosophies of Nietzsche, Bergson, Sri Aurobindo and Rumi are examples of irrational philosophy, which can be considered in the context of the synthesis of East and West. These philosophers attach special importance to intuition, mystical experience and direct understanding in cognition and understanding of reality. They criticize rational thinking and strive to overcome its limitations, opening new paths to the deeper aspects of being. Their philosophies also pay attention to time and its changeable nature, are opposed to static categories and call for overcoming duality. They emphasize the importance of integrity, unity and love in achieving a deep understanding of the world.

Together, these philosophies form a mosaic of irrational philosophy that can serve as a bridge between East and West. They offer new ways of thinking and looking at the world, combining different cultural traditions and ideas. Ultimately, the philosophies of Nietzsche, Bergson, Sri Aurobindo and Rumi help us realize the importance of intuition, mystical experience and direct understanding in our quest for truth and a deep understanding of reality. Their irrational philosophy can inspire us to take a more open and holistic view of the world, in which East and West can unite in search of deep understanding and harmony.

### References:

1. Saidova, K. (2021). The value of the family in indian philosophy. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied*

*Science*, 09 (101), 71-74. DOI: <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2021.09.101.4>.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

2. Kabulniyazova, G.T. (2022). Spontaneous-figurative memory in the works of Henri Bergson and in Sufism (comparative analysis). *Voprosy Filosofii*, 12, 159-167. DOI: 10.21146/0042-8744-2022-12-159-167.
3. Bergson, H. (2007). *Matter and Memory*. (p.368). New York, Cosimo Classics.
4. Nietzsche, F. (2017). *The Will to Power*. (p.688). London, Penguin Classics.
5. Sri, Aurobindo. (1990). *The Synthesis of Yoga*. (p.889). Delhi, Lotus Press.
6. Rumi, J. (1997). *Ichindagi ichingdadir*. (p.314). Tashkent, Yozuvchi.
7. Karimov, R., & Bekbaev, R. (2022). The traditionalism of Rene Guenon in the discourse of philosophy of history and social anthropology. *Wisdom*, 1 (21), 194-202. DOI: 10.24234/wisdom.v21i1.712.
8. Kabulniyazova, G.T. (2021). Comparative analysis of Sri Aurobindo Ghosh, Jalaliddin Rumi and Henri Bergson's ideas about intuition and spiritual love. *Voprosy Filosofii*, 11, 188-197. DOI: 10.21146/0042-8744-2021-11-188-197.
9. Blauberg, I. (2019). On the Meaning of Music in the Philosophy of Henri Bergson. *Nauchnyy Vestnik Moskovskoy Konservatorii*, 10 (2), 174-185. DOI: 10.26176/mosconsv.2019.37.2.007.
10. Kavaloski, J. (2009). Performativity and the dialectic of Time in Thomas Mann's *Der Zauberberg*. *German Studies Review*, 32 (2), pp. 319-342.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 17.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Aleksei Vasilevich Shevchenko**

National Academy of Sciences of the Kyrgyz Republic  
Doctoral student, Candidate of Legal Sciences  
Bishkek, Kyrgyz Republic  
[alexis.sanchez.82@mail.ru](mailto:alexis.sanchez.82@mail.ru)

**Tair Mamayunusovich Dzhorobekov**

Osh State University  
Candidate of Legal Sciences  
Kyrgyz Republic

## ON THE REASONS FOR ERRORS IN CRIMINAL PROCEEDINGS

**Abstract:** The article discusses the causes of situations in criminal proceedings when a judge or a judicial body makes serious legal or procedural mistakes when considering and resolving a criminal case. These errors can have a significant impact on the outcome of the case and the rights of the parties. In addition, recommendations are given to correct such situations.

**Key words:** Criminal justice, principles of criminal proceedings, judicial error, judicial system.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Shevchenko, A. V., & Dzhorobekov, T. M. (2023). On the reasons for errors in criminal proceedings. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 112-115.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-16> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.16>

**Scopus ASCC:** 3308.

### О ПРИЧИНАХ ОШИБОК В УГОЛОВНОМ СУДОПРОИЗВОДСТВЕ

**Аннотация:** В статье рассматриваются причины возникновения ситуаций в уголовном судопроизводстве, когда судья или судебный орган допускают серьезные правовые или процессуальные ошибки при рассмотрении и решении уголовного дела. Эти ошибки могут оказать значительное влияние на результат дела и права сторон. Кроме этого, даются рекомендации для исправления таких ситуаций.

**Ключевые слова:** Уголовное судопроизводство, принципы уголовного судопроизводства, судебная ошибка, судебная система.

#### Введение

Правильное осуществление задач уголовного судопроизводства имеет важное значение для обеспечения законности, обоснованности и справедливости судебных решений. Принципы уголовного судопроизводства являются основой для справедливого рассмотрения уголовных дел и защиты прав граждан.

Одним из ключевых принципов является презумпция невиновности, согласно которой каждый обвиняемый считается невиновным до тех пор, пока его вина не будет доказана в установленном порядке. Также важными

принципами являются право на справедливое судебное разбирательство, право на защиту [1].

Нарушения принципов уголовного судопроизводства могут привести к судебным ошибкам, неправомерным обвинениям или несправедливым приговорам. Это может причинить вред невиновным людям, ограничить их права и свободы, а также нарушить доверие граждан к судебной системе. В этой связи, постановка вопроса о роли государства в обеспечении правоохраны, защиты прав и свобод человека имеет большое значение [2, с.9-12].

Поэтому важно обеспечивать строгое соблюдение принципов уголовного

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

судопроизводства, проводить процессуальные действия в соответствии с законом и гарантировать права обвиняемых и потерпевших. Это поможет создать основу для справедливого и надежного судебного процесса и поддерживать доверие граждан к судебной системе.

Субъектом судебной ошибки является суд – государственный орган, который согласно ч. 1 ст. 94 Конституции Кыргызской Республики имеет право осуществлять правосудие на территории Кыргызской Республики [3]. Судебная ошибка возникает, когда суд совершает ошибку или нарушает закон при принятии решения по делу.

Смысл судебной ошибки заключается в том, что она может иметь негативные последствия для сторон, участвующих в судебном процессе, и для общества в целом. Судебная ошибка может привести к вынесению незаслуженного, противозаконного или неправомерного решения, которое не соответствует действующему законодательству или правосудным нормам. Это может оказать негативное влияние на защиту прав и интересов граждан, на справедливость и доверие к судебной системе.

Важно отметить, что судебная ошибка не всегда является результатом намеренных действий суда. Она может быть вызвана неправильной интерпретацией закона, что может свидетельствовать о формальном подходе в реализации установленных норм права [4, с.484-487]. Ошибками в процессе рассмотрения дела также выступают недостаточная информированность суда или другие факторы. Однако, независимо от причин, судебная ошибка может быть обжалована в вышестоящих судебных инстанциях и исправлена.

Вопрос причин возникновения судебных ошибок является сложным и многогранным, и существует несколько точек зрения на этот вопрос. Одни авторы утверждают, что судебные ошибки могут быть вызваны как субъективными, так и объективными факторами [5, с.117-124].

К субъективным причинам относятся недостаточность и ограниченность расследования, неполное использование судьями возможностей на стадии рассмотрения дела в судебном заседании, недостаток специальных знаний и опыта работы, недобросовестное отношение судей к принятию решений, а также не критическое отношение к материалам и результатам предварительного следствия [6, с.10-13]. С другой стороны, некоторые авторы полагают, что причина судебных ошибок находится за пределами судебного процесса и всегда связана с людьми, которые не смогли или не захотели точно соблюсти требования закона при решении определенного вопроса или дела [7, с.40-41]. По их мнению, все причины судебных ошибок имеют субъективный характер.

В целом, причины судебных ошибок являются сложным сочетанием различных факторов, как субъективных, так и объективных. Важно разбираться в конкретных обстоятельствах каждого случая, чтобы определить источники ошибок и предпринять меры для их предотвращения [8, с.53-68].

Имеются несколько проблем, связанных с судебной системой, такие как недостаточное изучение материалов дела, отсутствие учета заявлений обвиняемого или его адвоката, отступление от сроков рассмотрения дела и недостаточная организация труда и контроль в судах. Рассмотрим каждую из этих проблем более подробно:

1. Недостаточное изучение материалов дела. Судьи должны тщательно изучать все материалы дела, прежде чем принимать решение. Это включает в себя ознакомление с обвинительным заключением, а также с защитными материалами, представленными сторонами. Недостаточное изучение дела может привести к неправомерным выводам и несправедливым приговорам.

2. Недоверие к подсудимому. Судьи должны оценивать доказательства и аргументы, представленные всеми сторонами дела, включая подсудимого и его адвоката. Неправедливо пренебрегать заявлениями обвиняемого или его защиты. Судебная система должна обеспечивать равноправие сторон и учитывать их позицию при принятии решения.

3. Отсутствие описательной части преступного деяния. Приговор суда должен содержать четкое описание преступления, доказательства, на основе которых были сделаны выводы, и соответствие фактов, изложенных в приговоре, выводам, содержащимся в решении. Отсутствие этих элементов может привести к отмене приговора и дополнительным затратам времени и ресурсов на повторное рассмотрение дела.

4. Отступление от сроков рассмотрения дела. Судебная система должна стремиться к своевременному рассмотрению дела. Задержки в рассмотрении дел могут создавать неудобства для всех сторон, а также приводить к ухудшению борьбы с преступностью. Эффективная организация работы судов, улучшение исполнительской дисциплины и контроля, а также более эффективное управление делами могут помочь уменьшить задержки в рассмотрении дел.

Необходимо улучшать судебную систему, чтобы обеспечить справедливое и эффективное рассмотрение дел [9, с.10-13]. Это может включать обучение судей и работников судов, улучшение инфраструктуры и технологической поддержки, повышение требовательности к кадровой службе и усиление контроля за передвижением дел. Также

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

важно уделить внимание процессу судебной реформы, чтобы устранить системные проблемы и обеспечить надлежащее функционирование судебной системы.

Для успешного выполнения своих обязанностей судья должен обладать определенными качествами и навыками. Вот некоторые из них:

1. Теоретические познания в области права. Судья должен иметь глубокое понимание основных принципов и концепций правовой системы, процессуальных и материальных норм. Он должен быть хорошо знаком с общими принципами права и иметь специализированные знания в своей области компетенции.

2. Понимание действующего законодательства. Судья должен быть в курсе последних изменений и дополнений в законодательстве. Он должен уметь анализировать и интерпретировать законы и применять их в конкретных ситуациях.

3. Аналитические навыки. Судья должен уметь критически оценивать доказательства, показания свидетелей, заключения экспертов и другие материалы дела. Он должен способен анализировать и сравнивать различные факты и аргументы, чтобы прийти к обоснованным и справедливым решениям.

4. Независимость и беспристрастность. Судья должен быть независимым от внешних влияний и давлений. Он должен принимать решения исключительно на основе закона и фактов дела, обеспечивая справедливость и равноправие перед законом для всех сторон.

5. Этика и профессионализм. Судья должен соблюдать высокие стандарты этики и профессионального поведения. Он должен проявлять уважение к участникам процесса, соблюдать принципы конфиденциальности и сохранять неприкосновенность права на справедливый судебный процесс.

6. Непрерывное образование и развитие. Судья должен постоянно обновлять свои знания и навыки. Он должен участвовать в семинарах, конференциях, чтении специализированной литературы и других формах профессионального образования.

В целом, судьи играют важную роль в обеспечении правосудия и защите прав и свобод граждан. Правильное применение закона и адекватное учет обстоятельств дела являются основой справедливого судебного процесса.

Статья 291 УПК КР регулирует вопросы гласности судебного разбирательства. Одним из принципов судебного процесса является гласность, что означает, что судебные разбирательства должны быть открытыми [10] для общественности, за исключением случаев, когда закон предусматривает иные условия. В

соответствии с частью 2 статьи 291 УПК КР, закрытое рассмотрение дела допускается только в исключительных случаях, таких как защита государственной безопасности или конфиденциальность личных данных.

Согласно Уголовно-процессуальному законодательству Кыргызской Республики, каждому участнику уголовного процесса суд обязан разъяснить его процессуальные права. Это означает, что суд должен в понятной форме сообщить участнику содержание и порядок осуществления его прав. Однако, на практике некоторые суды могут ограничиться пересказом смысла соответствующей статьи УПК КР, не обеспечивая полного и понятного разъяснения прав участника, что может привести к незнанию или непониманию участниками дела своих прав, и это может считаться судебной ошибкой.

Судебная ошибка может возникнуть, если участник дела не понимает своих прав и возможностей, что негативно повлияет на их защиту или иные процессуальные действия. Поэтому важно, чтобы суд предоставлял четкое и подробное разъяснение процессуальных прав участников уголовного процесса, чтобы они могли эффективно осуществлять свою защиту и понимать, какие действия им разрешены или запрещены.

Судебные ошибки не являются проблемой, свойственной только кыргызскому правосудию. Они встречаются в различных странах по всему миру [11]. Многие исследования, проведенные иностранными учеными, подтверждают этот факт. Многие страны принимают меры для улучшения своей судебной системы и снижения числа судебных ошибок. Это может включать в себя внедрение более строгих процедур проверки доказательств, обучение судей и адвокатов, а также улучшение доступа к правосудию для всех граждан. Изучение проблемы судебных ошибок в разных странах позволяет обмениваться опытом и находить наилучшие практики, которые могут быть применены для улучшения правосудия во всем мире. Это постоянный процесс, и стремление к совершенствованию судебной системы должно быть приоритетом для всех стран.

Таким образом, судебная ошибка может быть отклонением в работе суда, нарушающим нормы права и мешающим достижению целей уголовного судопроизводства. Судебная ошибка может иметь как субъективный, так и объективный характер.

Субъективная судебная ошибка происходит по вине судьи, то есть вызвана его действиями или бездействием. Это может быть результатом неправильного применения закона, неправильной оценки фактов дела, пренебрежения правами сторон и т.д.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Объективная судебная ошибка возникает независимо от воли судьи и может быть связана с недостатками в законодательстве, правовых коллизиях, высокой нагрузкой на судью или сложностью дела. Это ошибка, которая может возникнуть из-за внешних обстоятельств, вроде неоднозначной или нечеткой формулировки закона или отсутствия ясных правил для решения конкретной ситуации.

Точный перечень условий, приводящих к судебной ошибке, не может быть определен, так как каждый случай индивидуален. Однако, некоторые общие факторы, которые могут способствовать допущению ошибок, включают недостатки в законодательстве, несоответствия

между различными правовыми актами, высокую нагрузку на судей, сложность дел и так далее. Важно отметить, что все судьи работают с одним и тем же законодательством и изучают одну и ту же судебную практику. Тем не менее, различные судьи могут по-разному интерпретировать и применять правила, что может привести к разным результатам и допущению ошибок.

Исправление судебной ошибки предусмотрено законодательством и может осуществляться через апелляционные или кассационные процедуры, пересмотр дела или иные правовые механизмы, предусмотренные законом.

## References:

1. (2021). *Criminal Proceedings of the Kyrgyz Republic: A Textbook (General Part)*, B., (p.271).
2. Berdaliev, K.Ch., Dzhorobekova, A.M., & Dzhorobekov, Zh.M. (2018). Correlation of the law enforcement function with other functions of the state: mutual influence and interdependence. *Trends in the development of science and education*. 2018. No. 43-1, pp. 9-12.
3. (2021). *Constitution of the Kyrgyz Republic*, Bishkek.
4. Berdaliev, K.Ch., Dzhorobekova, A.M., & Dzhorobekov, Zh.M. (2018). The relevance of religion in the formation and development of the legal system of the Kyrgyz Republic. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, № 10 (66), pp.484-487.
5. Pudovochkin, Yu.E. (2019). Subjective factors of qualifying errors. *Bulletin of the Moscow University of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of Russia*. 2019. №4, pp.117-124.
6. Kolokolov, N.A. (2007). Judicial error in criminal proceedings: concept, ways of correction. *Criminal legal proceedings*. 2007. No. 2, pp.10-13.
7. Ternovskaya, O. A., & Ternovsky, R. A. (2010). Judicial errors of objective and double imputation. *Criminal trial*. 2010. No. 9, pp. 40-41.
8. Dzorobekova, A.M., Nuriev, D.Sh., Sayakova, M.K., Kenzhebek kyzy, M., Kokoeva, A.M., & Shevchenko, A.V. (2022). Criminalization of Acts Impacting Human Security as a Result of the System of International Relations. *Pakistan Journal of Criminology*. 2022. Vol.14, No4, pp.53-68.
9. Ostapenko, I.A. (2007). Reasons for the occurrence of judicial errors. *Bulletin of the Vladimir Law Institute*, Vladimir, 2007, No. 4 (5).
10. (2021). *Criminal Procedure Code of the Kyrgyz Republic*, Bishkek.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 17.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue



Article



**Natella Jabbarova**

Azerbaijan State University of Oil and Industry  
Associate Professor

**Letefet Magerramova**

Azerbaijan State University of Oil and Industry  
Associate Professor

**Almas Kurbanova**

Azerbaijan State University of Oil and Industry  
head of laboratory  
Department of Chemistry and Technology of Inorganic Substances  
[nata.him@mail.ru](mailto:nata.him@mail.ru)

## NEW ORGANIC REAGENTS FOR THE EXTRACTION OF NICKEL (II) PICRATE FROM THE SOLID PHASE

**Abstract:** The article presents the results of a study of an important area of analytical chemistry - extraction-photometric determination of nickel ions from the solid phase. We have studied the extraction of nickel picrate (NiPik<sub>2</sub>) from the solid phase using organic reagents of the acetylene series (L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub>, L<sub>3</sub>, L<sub>4</sub>) in a chloroform solution. A new technique for the extraction-photometric determination of the nickel ion from the solid phase is proposed. It has been established that organic reagents (L<sub>1</sub>-L<sub>4</sub>) exhibit a high extraction ability (0.11-0.64 mg/l) of Ni picrate from the solid phase, and the extraction activity of organic ligands changes in the series as follows L<sub>4</sub> > L<sub>3</sub> > L<sub>1</sub> > L<sub>2</sub>. The impact of a magnetic field has a positive effect on the extraction of nickel picrate from the solid phase, increasing it by 3-4%.

**Key words:** extraction ability, nickel (II) picrate, organic reagents, solid phase, equilibrium, magnetic field.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Jabbarova, N., Magerramova, L., & Kurbanova, A. (2023). New organic reagents for the extraction of nickel (II) picrate from the solid phase. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 116-120.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-17> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.17>

**Scopus ASCC:** 1600.

### Introduction

The extraction of transition metal ions from the solid phase by the extraction-photometric method has not yet been studied in detail, and information in the world scientific literature is limited. In this regard, studies on the extraction of ions from the solid phase with the help of organic ligands are very topical. From the analytical point of view, the separation of ions from the solid phase is of particular importance in the development of technology for obtaining pure, chemically pure, pure for analysis, and ultrapure metal salts [1-5].

There is also extraction, which is not accompanied by chemical interaction and can be

considered as a case of simple physical distribution. This is how symmetrical covalent molecules are extracted, for example, I<sub>2</sub>, GeCl<sub>4</sub>, the solubility of which in an organic solvent is usually an order of magnitude higher than in water. The same type includes the extraction of weak acids if their dissociation is completely suppressed in the presence of a strong acid [6-12].

For many years, liquid extraction, precipitation, centrifugation, column and thin layer chromatography have been the main methods for isolating, purifying, and concentrating analytes. Such preparation of samples is a lengthy and multi-stage process that requires the consumption of a large amount of extra

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

pure (does not introduce impurities!) Solvents and reagents, additional equipment and labor costs.

### Experimental part

For the extraction of Ni (II) ions from the solid phase, we used chloroform solutions of new organic reagents synthesized by us ( $L_1$ ,  $L_2$ ,  $L_3$ ,  $L_4$ ). These are tetrahalogen-containing hydrophobic organic compounds of the bicycloquinone type with an acetylene moiety.

To determine the degree of extraction - Nickel A-ion from the solid phase with organic ligands  $L_1$ - $L_4$ , solutions of organic ligands shown in Table 1 were prepared with a content of  $L_1 = 71.2$  mg;  $L_2 = 59.6$  mg;  $L_3 = 106.2$  mg;  $L_4 = 109.6$  mg, which were dissolved in 200 ml of chloroform ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) and a 10<sup>-3</sup> molar solution was prepared. Chemically pure nickel picrate ( $\text{NiPic}_2$ ) was used for extraction.

To determine the optical density of organic ligands  $L_1$ - $L_4$ , dried at 110-115°C salt of picrate and nickel in the form of a powder weighing 200 mg was poured into a conical flask and 30 ml of a chloroform solution of organic ligands  $L_1$ - $L_4$  with a concentration of 1.10<sup>-3</sup> - 2.10<sup>-3</sup> M was added. Solution mixed with a magnetic stirrer for 3 hours at a temperature of 18 - 20°C. Every 10 min. a sample was taken from the organic phase in a volume of 2 ml. On the device Spekol ( $l = 1.0$  cm,  $\lambda = 375$  nm) was determined by the optical density - A, and the content of nickel ions in the solid phase.

To determine the time of establishing the chemical equilibrium of the nickel ion extraction process, 200 mg of nickel (II) picrate salt powder was poured into a conical flask with a capacity of 100 ml and 30.0 ml of a 10<sup>-3</sup> M chloroform solution of

organic ligands  $L_1$ - $L_4$  was added to it. After inserting a magnetic stirrer into the flask, the neck of the flask was closed with a polished stopper. Stirring was carried out for 5 hours. Every 20 min. the concentration of the organic phase (A) was measured on a Spekol-10 spectrophotometer ( $l = 5.0$  cm,  $\lambda = 375$  nm) and the time of chemical equilibrium ( $\tau$ ) between the phases was examined.

### Results and discussions

We synthesized organic ligands with a quantitative yield of up to 86%.

-  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_2$ -1,2,3,4-tetrachloro-7,8-quinone-5-(3-methyl-oxy-1-butyl)bicyclo[2,2,2]octene-2 - ( $L_1$ );

$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_2$ -1,2,3,4-tetrachloro-7,8-quinone-5-ethynyl-bicyclo [2,2,2]octene-2 - ( $L_2$ );

$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{10}\text{Br}_4\text{O}_3$ -1,2,3,4-tetrabromo-7,8-quinone-5-(4-methyl-4-oxy-2-pentenyl) bicycle [2,2,2]octene-2 - ( $L_3$ );

$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{12}\text{Br}_4\text{O}_3$ -1,2,3,4-tetrabromo-7,8-quinone-5-(4-methyl-oxy-2-pentenyl)bicyclo[2,2,2] octene-2 - ( $L_4$ )

Their structure was studied by the IR spectroscopic method, and the melting points and molecular weights were determined.

As a result of the experiments on the extraction of nickel picrate from the solid phase, the extraction activity of organic ligands was established - R:  $L_1$  - R=75%,  $L_2$ - up to 69.60%,  $L_3$ - up to 88.05%,  $L_4$  up to 95.25%. The amount of Ni ion from 0.49 mg to 0.64 mg was determined by the extraction-photometric method. It was found that the ability to extract organic ligands ( $L_1$ - $L_4$ ) is arranged in a row as follows  $L_4 > L_3 > L_1 > L_2$  (Table 1).

**Table 1. Maximum extraction of nickel picrate by chloroform solutions  $L_1$  - $L_4$  from the solid phase,  $\tau = 2.5$  h,  $\lambda_{\text{max}} = 375$  nm,  $l = 5.0$  cm**

Organic ligands	Optical density, A	Quantity, $\text{Ni}^{2+}$ , mg/l	Extraction, R, %
$L_1$	0,28	0,49	75,0
$L_2$	0,26	0,45	69,6
$L_3$	0,33	0,56	88,05
$L_4$	0,33	0,64	95,25

As a result of studying the chemical equilibrium of the nickel ion extraction process with organic ligands, it was determined that in the case of the  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  ligand, complete chemical equilibrium between the

phases is established after 3 hours, and in the case of  $L_3$ ,  $L_4$  - after 2.5 hours. Magnetic stirring for 5 hours does not disturb the chemical equilibrium (Figure 1).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

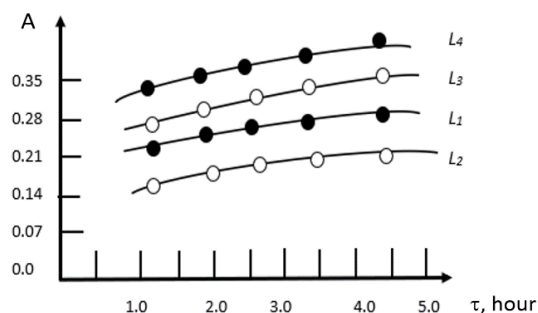


Figure 1. Change in optical density (A) over time for organic ligands - L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub>, L<sub>3</sub>, L<sub>4</sub>

We also studied the effect of a magnetic field on the extraction of a nickel ion by the photometric method with chloroform solutions of organic ligands - L<sub>1</sub>-L<sub>4</sub> with a concentration of 0.25.10<sup>-3</sup> - 2.10<sup>-3</sup> M. The equilibrium between the phases is established after 80 minutes, and the extraction of nickel into the organic phase increases by 4 %. The results obtained are presented in table 2.

As can be seen, nickel picrate salts are extracted from the solid phase into the organic phase in an amount of 0.12-0.65 mg/l, and the extraction increases to 99%.

The process of extraction of metal ions from the solid phase to complex formation with ligands forming an internal complex is mainly controlled by the following factors: the structure of organic ligands containing halogen atoms, acetylene fragments (-C≡C-), functional groups ≡ N, =NH, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -OH, =C=O, -S-, =NOH, etc. As a result, internal complex compounds are formed due to the coordination bond

with the transition metal ion. Thus, these organic ligands diffuse into the pores of the metal salt in the solid phase. After a certain time between the phases, a chemical equilibrium occurs between the liquid organic ligand and the solid phase, which depends on factors such as temperature, pressure, metal salt surface, particle size, phase structure of the crystal, ionic radius of the metal. In addition, it also depends on the contact time of the phases, the amount of acetylene fragment (-C≡C-) and functional groups in tetrahaloorganic ligands.

Ultimately, there is a transition from the solid phase to the liquid (anhydrous) phase with tetrahalogenbenzoquinone organic ligands (L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub>, L<sub>3</sub>, L<sub>4</sub>), i.e., macromolecular ions are formed - associates, which are extracted into the liquid organic phase due to diffusion.

The proposed scheme for the formation of such an associate is shown in Figure. 2.

Table 2. Physical and chemical characteristics of organic ligands and the degree of nickel ion extraction in a magnetic field

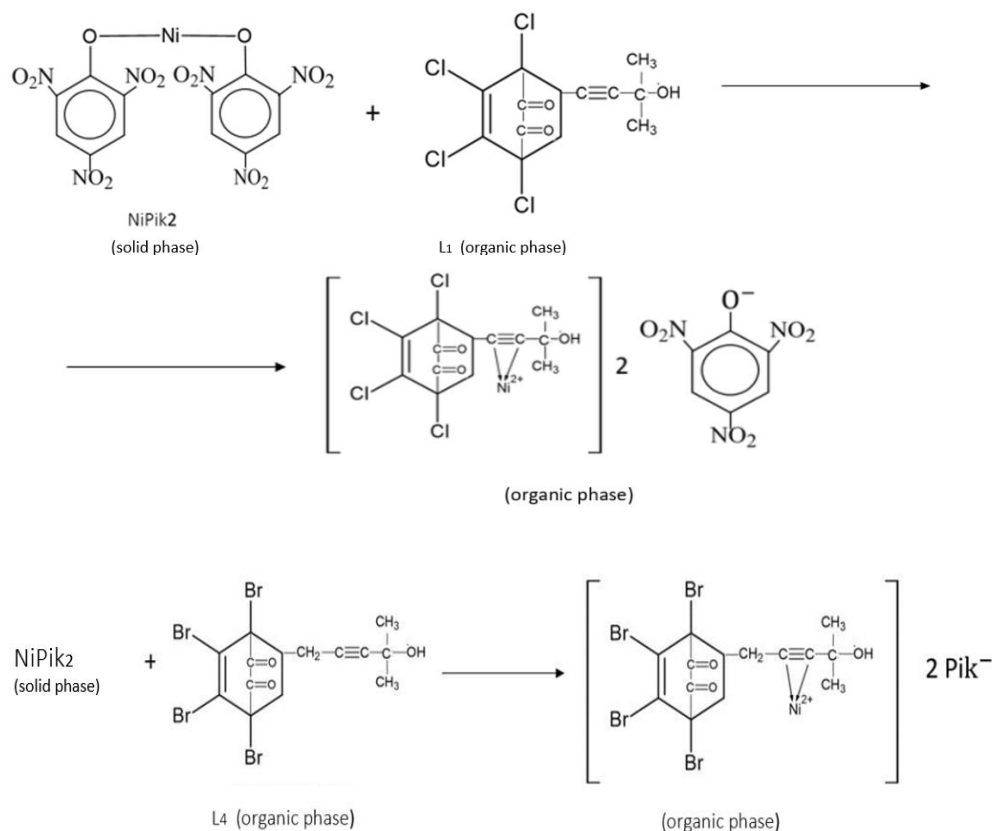
Organic ligands L <sub>n</sub>	Concentration, C•10 <sup>-3</sup> M	Optical density, A	Quantity Ni <sup>2+</sup> , mg/l	Extraction, R, %
C <sub>13</sub> H <sub>10</sub> Cl <sub>4</sub> O <sub>2</sub> - L <sub>1</sub>	0,25	0,074	0,12	18,75
	0,50	0,152	0,235	36,72
	0,75	0,223	0,356	55,62
	1,00	0,29	0,48	75,00
	1,25	0,29	0,48	75,00
	1,50	0,28	0,48	75,00
C <sub>13</sub> H <sub>10</sub> Cl <sub>4</sub> O <sub>2</sub> - L <sub>2</sub>	0,25	0,106	0,113	17,4
	0,50	0,136	0,224	34,8
	0,75	0,201	0,34	52,2
	1,00	0,261	0,45	69,6
	1,25	0,261	0,45	69,6
	1,50	0,262	0,45	69,6
C <sub>13</sub> H <sub>10</sub> Br <sub>4</sub> O <sub>3</sub> -	0,25	0,084	0,14	22,01
	0,50	0,171	0,28	44,02
	0,75	0,202	0,43	66,03

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350



L <sub>3</sub>	1,00	0,331	0,56	88,05
	1,25	0,331	0,56	88,05
	1,50	0,332	0,56	88,05
C <sub>14</sub> H <sub>12</sub> Br <sub>4</sub> O <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> L <sub>4</sub>	0,25	0,091	0,16	23,81
	0,50	0,185	0,32	48,62
	0,75	0,281	0,48	92,43
	1,00	0,361	0,65	98,25
	1,25	0,361	0,65	98,55
	1,50	0,362	0,65	98,55

**Figure 2. Scheme of nickel ion extraction from the solid phase by organic ligands**

**Conclusion:** Thus, as a result of our study, we have developed a new method for the extraction of transition metal salts with organic ligands of tetrahalobicyclic reagents L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub>, L<sub>3</sub>, L<sub>4</sub> into the organic phase.

Synthesized and determined the physicochemical properties of organic ligands L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub>, L<sub>3</sub>, L<sub>4</sub>. The Spekol device (l=1.0 cm, λ=375 nm) measured the optical density of organic ligands and the degree of extraction of nickel ions from the solid phase, which

was more than 95%. It has been established that the magnetic field has a positive effect on the degree of nickel ion extraction.

The proposed method can be used to obtain ultrachemically pure salts of nickel and other metals, as well as the synthesis of some organic substances by interfacial catalysis. In addition, it opens up opportunities for studying the mechanism of the extraction process from the solid phase.

**References:**



**Impact Factor:**

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHII (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

1. Byrne, K. (2013). Toxicity of local anaesthetic. Engelbrecht. *Trends in Anaesthesia and Critical Care*, 2013, V. 3, №1, pp. 25-30.
2. Odinets, L., Sharova, E. V., Artyshin, O. I., & Lyssenko, K. A. (2010). Novel class of functionalized ionic liquids with grafted CMPO-moieties for actinides and rare-earth elements recovery. *Dalton Trans*, 2010, V.39, pp.4170-4178.
3. Morosanova, M.A., Morosanova, E.I., Anisimov, D.I., & Zolotov, Yu.A. (2015). Using silicatitania xerogels for solid phase spectrophotometric determination of fluoride in oral hygiene products. *Current Analytical Chemistry*, 2015, V. 11. № 4, pp. 291-299.
4. Rudometkina, T.F., & Ivanov, V.M. (2011). Photometric determination of large quantities nickel and copper in natural and industrial objects in the form of ethylenediaminetetraacetates. *Vestnik Mosk. Univ.*, p. 2, Chemistry, 2011. V. 52. No. 3, - pp. 204-208.
5. Shilykovskaya, D.O., & Elokhov, A.M. (2021). Extraction-spectrophotometric determination of nickel with 4-(2-pyridylazo)resorcinol in the neonol AF 9-10-water system. *Bulletin of the Perm University, Chemistry*, 2021, issue 4, pp. 223-233.
6. Aliyev, S.G., Ismaylova, R.A., Suleymanov, E.I., Magarramova, L.M., Sultanzadeh, S.S., Askerova, Z.G., & Zalov, A.Z. (2018). Spektrofotometric investigation of complex formation of nickel(II) with 2-hidroxy-5-nitrothiophenol and aminophenol. *IJISSET International Journal of Innovative Science, Engineering Technology*, - Vol. 5, Issue 3, March 2018, pp. 192-206.
7. Sun, X., Luo, H., & Dai, S. (2013). Mechanistic investigation of solvent extraction based on anion-functionalized ionic liquids for selective separation of rare-earth ions. *Dalton Trans*, 2013, V. 42. № 23, pp. 8270-8275.
8. Larsson, K., & Binnemans, K. (2014). Selective extraction of metals using ionic liquids for nickel metal hydride battery recycling. *Green Chem*, 2014, V. 16. № 10, pp. 4595-4603.
9. Tagashira, Sh. (2013). *Metal ammine-complexes using SDS and KCl at room temperature end a small-angle* - Japan, 2013, V. 20, pp. 39-52.
10. Shilykovskaya, D.O., & Elokhov, A.M. (2021). Extraction-spectrophotometric determination of nickel with 4-(2-pyridylazo)resorcinol in the neonol AF 9-10-water system. *Bulletin of the Perm University, Chemistry*, 2021, issue 4, pp.223 -233.
11. Khiat, M., Pacheco-Fernández, I., Pino, V., Benabdallah, T., Ayala, J.H., Afonso, A.M. (2018). A guanidinium ionic liquid-based surfactant as an adequate solvent to separate and preconcentrate cadmium and copper in water using in situ dispersive liquid-liquid microextraction. *Anal. Methods*. 2018. V. 10. № 13, pp. 1529-1537.
12. Teng, H. (2011). Extraction separation of BSA in aqueous two-phase systems of anionic and cationic surfactant mixtures. *Journal of dispersion science and technology*, 2011, V. 32, № 6, pp. 829-833.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHLI (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 18.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Ekaterine Nakhutsrishvili**

Iakob Gogebashvili Telavi State University  
Doctor of Education in Teacher Education (English Language Teaching Methodology)  
Georgia

**Elene Dzamiashvili**

Iakob Gogebashvili Telavi State University  
Doctor of Education in Teacher Education (English Language Teaching Methodology)  
Georgia

**Ketevan Shashviashvili**

Iakob Gogebashvili Telavi State University  
Doctor of Education  
Georgia

## DIFFERENTIATION OF THE GRAMMATICAL CATEGORY OF VOICE IN ENGLISH AND GEORGIAN LANGUAGES

**Abstract:** The paper deals with the study of a verb and one of its categories – the Voice. It is worth mentioning that the verb represents the spine of the grammar of any language. It is the most complex and capacious part of speech. The Voice is one of the essential and principal among the English verb categories characterized by distinct peculiarities, which should be known by the English language learners. Like the English language, the Voice in Georgian is one of the most complicated categories. The difficulty stands in the fact, that none of the Voices except for passive has any proper, specific markers. Moreover, one voice resembles the other with a number of signs. The difficulty of the verb is conditioned by its polypersonalism.

In our study we aimed at finding out and analyzing some distinctions of the grammatical category of Voice in two different languages – the English and Georgian ones. According to our findings it becomes obvious that the problem of the Voice category is quite different in the English and Georgian languages. From this point, the acquisition of the Georgian Voice category is more difficult than the English one, though the latest is characterized by specific peculiarities as well. In addition, we can also mention that the Voice is mainly analyzed with its form in English and transitivity in Georgian; the essential thing is that the word order is of great importance while forming the Voice in English, but it lacks importance in the Georgian language; besides, the verb has only 10 forms for Passive Voice in English, whereas the Georgian Passive Voice has the forms of all screeves; English is an analytical language, but Georgian – synthetical; Mostly, English language Passive Voice verb is translated with the Active Voice form in Georgian.

**Key words:** the category of voice, passivisation, differentiation, transitivity, analytical, synthetical.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Nakhutsrishvili, E., Dzamiashvili, E., & Shashviashvili, K. (2023). Differentiation of the Grammatical Category of Voice in English and Georgian Languages. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 121-125.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-18> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.18>

**Scopus ASCC:** 1203.

### Introduction

The verb represents the spine of the grammar of any language. It is the most complex and capacious part of speech. Among the verb categories, the Voice

is one of the most essential and important grammatical categories, which is characterized by certain peculiarities and it is quite necessary to study and analyze it for the language learners.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

In English the category of voice is the system of two-member opposeemes (*loves – is loved, loving – being loved, to love – to be loved, has loved – has been loved, etc.*) which show whether the action is represented as issuing from its subject (**the active voice**) or as experienced by its object (**the passive voice**). The active is the most common, unmarked voice while the passive is a marked member of the voice opposition as it is formed with the auxiliary *be* + **the past participle of the main verb**. The passive verb forms are less common and used for special discourse functions. Compared to active voice, passive voice reduces the importance of the agent (i.e. the doer of the action) and allows the receiver of the action to become the subject of the sentence. (Greenbaum & Quirk, 1995, 45-46).

However, passive verb phrases can also be formed with the auxiliary **get**, called the **get-passive** (e.g. *get dressed, get caught, etc.*). They are characteristically used in sentences involving adversity or benefit. (e.g. *Kim got sacked. vs. Kim got promoted*). **Get-passives** are usually used in conversation or in informal English. They tend to be avoided in formal style. For example: *It's about these people who got left behind in Vietnam*.

There are short and long passives. In short passives (also called agentless passives) the agent is not specified while long passives contain a **by-phrase** which specifies the agent of the action. E.g.:

*The children were sent to the camp. (short passive)*

*The children were sent to the camp by their uncle. (long passive).*

The frequency of both forms of the passive varies greatly across registers. Passive voice verbs are most common in the expository registers, where agents are often unknown or unimportant. In academic prose, passives account for about 25 percent of all finite verbs. Passives are also common in news (about 15 percent of all finite verbs), where they often report negative events that happened to someone. In contrast, passive voice verbs are rare in conversation. (Ward, Birner, Huddleston, 2002, 142).

## Similarities and Differences of the Grammatical Category of Voice in English and Georgian

### Study Analysis

Like English, the Voice is one of the most difficult verb categories in Georgian. This difficulty is caused by the fact that the Verb category does not have its own, specific marker (except for the passive voice). In addition, one Voice is very similar to another with a number of signs (Talakvadze, 1959, 229). The complexity of the verb is primarily determined by its finite forms.

Both in terms of expression and function, this category of verb can be quite different in various

languages. In this case, the matter of the Voice category distinctions in English and Georgian languages is of great interest for us. For this, first of all, the grammatical category of voice of these two languages should be compared from the quantitative point of view. The majority of linguists recognize the existence of only two voices - Active and Passive in English. As we have already mentioned, the active voice shows that the action is directed from the subject to the object and the subject itself is the doer of an action. The passive voice is used to show that the action is directed to the subject and not from it. The subject itself is not the doer of an action but is acted upon. The passive voice is not simply a parallel construction of the active voice. Very often we do not find the doer of an action in the passive constructions. This is because sometimes we do not know the doer of an action or we are not interested in it or sometimes we do not want to mention it for some reason or other. Some grammarians (e.g. Ilyish, 1971, 115) hold that the number of voices is more than two. Some of them count even five voices in Modern English, namely: the Active Voice, the Passive Voice, the Reflexive Voice, the Middle Voice, and the Reciprocal Voice. Unlike English, in Georgian language we have only three voices: Active, Passive and Middle. Since nowadays in both languages, the main attention is paid to the active and passive voice and only these two forms are explained in the class, we consider it appropriate to differentiate them.

In English, the passive is more widely represented, since passive forms are taken by both transitive and intransitive verbs, including prepositional verbs. In addition, there are those, which have the aptitude for having the object, but cannot produce a passive form. As such, we can consider a subclass of stative verbs that have a weakly expressed dynamism or reflect possession: *have, belong, cost, resemble, fail, etc.* Thus, verbs in English can or cannot allow passivisation (transformation of a sentence from an active form to a passive form), but the passive as a category is not in doubt, since even non-passivisation verbs can produce passive forms in certain contexts. Through the process of passivization, the direct object of an active declarative sentence can become the subject of a passive sentence. The opposite of passivization is activation. In order to understand passivization, it is helpful to view examples from a variety of texts.

"Passivisation ... keeps together those units or bits of language that form a constituent. The passive counterpart of an active clause usually contains a form of *be* and a *past participle*: *The man in the service station was seen by Muriel. The man was seen by Muriel in the service station.*" (Downing, A., & Locke, Ph. 2002).

"Passivisation allows you to leave out the Actor in Material processes, Experiencer in Mental

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

processes, and Sayer (speaker) in Verbal process clauses:

Material: *Poachers killed the elephant - the elephant was killed.*

Mental: *Rangers noticed the vultures - the vultures were noticed.*

Verbal: The marksmen told the poacher to freeze - the poacher was told to freeze.

Sometimes this enables newspapers, for instance, to protect sources by omitting the reporter, or to retail their own opinions as though they were someone else's: e.g. 'It is widely believed the BJP will not survive the confidence vote in the Indian Parliament.' ... the omission of an Actor will avoid apportioning blame or responsibility." (Goatly, A. 2000).

As for the use of the passive voice in the Georgian language, Charkviani (2014, 90) believes that it is very different from the passive voice of the English language. Moreover, the determination of the voice itself as a morphological category of the verb is based on different principles. The common thing in the definition is that when we talk about the category of voice in both cases we mean to differentiate the relation of the verb process. By relation, only the grammatically expressed direction is meant and not by any other means (vocabulary, occasional structures, etc.).

In addition, the issue of Voice in English is much easier than in Georgian. In English, even with the naked eye, the difference between the active and passive voice is clearly visible, as here the passive voice is a marked member of the opposition: it is characterized by the form - to be, the corresponding tense form of the auxiliary verb "to be" + the third form of the conjugation verb, while the active voice is unmarked, the mentioned form is completely unacceptable for it. In the Georgian language, the prefix-suffixes (i-, e-, -d) produce the passive voice, and most importantly, the issue of the Voice category is related to the transitivity of the verb. All active voice verbs are transitive, i.e. they have a direct object, and passive and middle voice verbs are intransitive. Accordingly, active voice verbs are two-person or three-person, while those of passive and middle voice are one-person or two-person (Kvatchadze, 1981, 231). In contrast, in English, the intransitive verb does not produce a passive form, e.g.: [*The cat ran away*].

Thus, in English, the voice is distinguished mainly from a formal point of view, and in Georgian, it is distinguished by its transitivity.

It is worth noting that during the production of Voice in the English language, extremely great importance is attached to the order of words, which is strictly determined during the transformation, which implies that in the active voice sentence in English, the subject must necessarily be in the first place, then the verb and the object must follow, e.g.: *I write the letter [me vwer werils]*. We cannot shuffle this order in any

way, because if we do not give great importance to it and write the object in the first place, then the sentence will lose its active form and we will get a passive voice sentence, e.g.: *The letter is written by me [werili iwereba chem mier]*. This issue is completely different in the Georgian language, where no meaning is assigned to a row of words and the content of the sentence is not changed by their replacement, that is, in Georgian we can move the subject to the end of the sentence and thus the content does not change, for example: let us compare, [*bavshvi werils wers*] (the subject is at the beginning of the sentence) and [*wers wers bavshvi*] (here the subject is at the end). As we can see, the sentence structure has not changed, in both sentences the subject is active and therefore the sentence belongs to active voice. Even in the passive construction, it is not necessary to write the object at the beginning of the sentence, as it is typical for English.

In addition, it is also worth mentioning that in the English language the verb has only 10 passive voice forms, these are: present indefinite (*is sent*), past indefinite (*was sent*), future indefinite (*will be sent*), future in the past indefinite (*would be sent*), present continuous (*is being sent*), past continuous (*was being sent*), present perfect (*has been sent*), past perfect (*had been sent*), future perfect (*will have been sent*), future in the past perfect (*would have been sent*). Consequently, some forms of the active voice do not have a proper counterpart in the passive. These are: future continuous (*will be sending*), present perfect continuous (*has been sending*), past perfect continuous (*had been sending*) and future perfect continuous (*will have been sending*). On the contrary, in the Georgian language, the verbs of the passive voice have the form of all screeves.

The next matter that distinguishes English and Georgian languages is the analytical (descriptive) and synthetic (organic) character of the passive form. As we know, in analytical (descriptive) passive, the past tense participle is represented in the form of a stem and by an auxiliary verb [*ikna, iknes, ikneba*], and in synthetic (organic) forms it is accompanied by a nominative marker. In this regard, it can be said that only analytical (descriptive) passive forms are characteristic of English, where the voice is constructed through the auxiliary verbs. Such verbs are "be", "get", "become", "have".

As for the Georgian language, here the analytical (descriptive) passives in modern literary Georgian are mostly confirmed in such cases when the verb cannot produce the usual passive form. Such forms are characteristic of the official-business style and are used even when there are synthetic (organic) forms of the same stem. For example: *garitskhul ikna // gairitskha, gavgavnil ikna // gaigavna...* Therefore, where it is possible to produce the ordinary passive, it is better to give preference to it, and not to the descriptive passive form: *gaketebul ikna – gaketda,*

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

*gamzadebul ikna* – *gamzadda* and so on. (Gogolashvili et al., 2011, 442).

As we have already mentioned, English is an analytical language, while Georgian is a synthetic one. Despite the fact that the Georgian language has both prefixed, suffixed and unmarked passive forms, it still uses descriptive forms and sometimes compound predicate, which should be attributed to the influence of translation from English. All this leads to the conclusion that nowadays the Georgian language is better able to convey information in analytical forms than in synthetic ones of the passive voice.

In most cases, the English passive voice verb is translated into Georgian in the form of the active voice (even because the word order of the Georgian language is not limited, and at the same time, whether the person is a familiar or an unknown one is reflected in the Georgian verb in the same way) and the verb finite form in such case (when the passive-passive is not translated) to a large extent is expressed by the of the objective person, e.g.: I **was put** on a plane (the New York Times, Dec. 3, 2014, A1) – [*chamsves tvitmpriNAVshi*].

Descriptive forms are common in the Georgian press, and it can be said that the English passive voice mostly corresponds to the Georgian descriptive passive. And the complex tenses of the English passive voice also appear in Georgian with a compound predicate, which is very similar in form to the descriptive passive (Charkviani, 2014, 92).

Furthermore, it is also important that the spelling issues related to the grammatical category of voice completely differentiate English and Georgian from each other, because in English there are often prepositional verbs, which are used mainly at the end of the sentence in the passive voice, e.g.: *he must be written to*. The preposition *by* is used before the subject expressed by an animate noun, and when we are dealing with a substance or an inanimate object in

the case of the subject, we use the preposition *with* instead of *by*.

In the Georgian language, spelling issues are more difficult in relation to the grammatical category of voice. Here the difficulty is caused by the thematic markers. In connection with the production of the passive voice forms, we should take into account that:

1. If the preverb *მი* [*mi-*] is attached to the second or third person forms of the passive voice, the two *ი* [*i*] are joined together: *მი-იმალე* [*mi-imale*], *მი-იმალა* [*mi-imala*];

2. When adding the preverb *შე* [*she-*] to the 2nd and 3rd person forms of the passive voice, two *ე* [*e*] are joined together: *შე-ეფარები* [*she-efarebi*];

3. If the suffixed passive is derived from a word that ends in *დ* [*d*], two *დ* [*d*] are joined together: *ბინდ-ი* [*bind-i*] – *ბინდ-დება* [*bind-d-eba*];

4. If from a word starting with *ე* [*e*], the *e*-form is added by the preverb *შე* [*she-*], the three *ე* [*e*] comes together: *შე-ეჭვა* [*she-e-etchva*];

5. The participle of the descriptive passive is used as a stem if it precedes the auxiliary verb, and it is in the nominative case if it is given after the auxiliary verb: *დანიშნულ იქნა* [*danishnul ikna*], but: *იქნა დანიშნული* [*ikna danishnuli*] (Kvatchadze, 1993, 238-239).

## Conclusion

According to the findings of our study concerning the distinctions of the grammatical category of voice in English and Georgian languages, it should be concluded that the question of the grammatical category of voice is completely different in English and Georgian languages. In this regard, it is more difficult to identify the Georgian language voice category than the English one, however, the latter is also characterized by certain peculiarities.

## References:

1. Charkviani, N. (2014). The Use of Analytical Forms of the Passive Voice in the Georgian and American Press. *Scientific Refereed Journal "Language and Culture"* #11, Kutaisi.
2. Downing, A., & Locke, Ph. (2002). *A University Course in English Grammar*. Routledge.
3. Giorgobiani, L., Kakhishvili, L., Matskhonashvili, G., & Kvividze, R. (2004). *Theory and Methodology of Teaching Foreign Languages*. Tbilisi: Publishing House "Language and Culture".
4. Goatly, A. (2000). *Critical Reading and Writing: An Introductory Coursebook*. Routledge.
5. Gogolashvili, G., et al. (2011). *Morphology of Modern Georgian Language*, Tbilisi.
6. Greenbaum, S., & Quirk, R. (1995). *A Student's Grammar of the English Language*. Longman.
7. Ilyish, B.A. (1971). *The Structure of Modern English*. Leningrad.
8. Kvatchadze, L. (1981). *Georgian Language, Part I. 3rd revised and updated edition*. Tbilisi: Publishing House "Education".

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

9. Kvatchadze, L. (1993). *Georgian Language – the fourth revised edition*. Tbilisi: Publishing House "Rubikoni".
10. Talakvadze, M. (1959). *Methodology of Teaching Georgian Language Grammar*. Tbilisi: State University Publishing House.
11. Ward, G., Birner, B., & Huddleston, R. (2002). *Information Packaging. In: The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*. Cambridge University Press.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](https://doi.org/10.15863/TAS) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](https://doi.org/10.15863/TAS)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 18.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Jamshid Sharafetdinovich Tukhtabaev**  
Tashkent State University of Economics  
PhD., Associate Professor,  
Uzbekistan  
[jamshidtukhtabaev@gmail.com](mailto:jamshidtukhtabaev@gmail.com)

**Nozima Isomiddinovna Soatalieva**  
University of Geological Sciences  
Student,  
Uzbekistan  
[nozimasoataliyeva@gmail.com](mailto:nozimasoataliyeva@gmail.com)

## THE IMPORTANCE AND NECESSITY OF ENSURING FOOD SAFETY

**Abstract:** This article focuses on the need to ensure food safety. The results of large-scale reforms to ensure food security are reflected. On this topic, the results of scientific research conducted by leading economists of the countries of the world, and the measures taken by the countries of the world and the FAO organization to ensure food safety were studied. The concept of food security also requires the country to achieve independence and self-sufficiency in terms of basic food. Food independence means the possibility of providing the country's population with basic food products at the expense of domestic resources and production in an amount no less dangerous. Based on these opinions, in our opinion, the concept of food security is based on achieving food independence based on the self-sufficiency of the country in food products by harmonizing domestic sources of sustainable economic development and acceptable levels of imports necessary for citizens to have a reliable and stable physical (quantitative), economic and social access to high-quality and safe food products necessary to ensure an active and healthy lifestyle, in volumes not less than the expressed rational consumption norms established in the country. The study is based on the results of extensive analysis and observations based on scientific, theoretical and practical research. As a result of our scientific research, scientific and practical proposals and recommendations for ensuring food safety have been developed.

**Key words:** Food, Security, Economic Security, Population Consumption, Agricultural Products, Food Security, Population Income.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Tukhtabaev, J. Sh., & Soatalieva, N. I. (2023). The importance and necessity of ensuring food safety. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 126-130.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-19> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.19>  
**Scopus ASCC:** 2000.

### Introduction

Humanity is known to have had a security problem. The term "security" first appeared in literature from the 12th century. In fact, the concept of "security" became popular in 1190, according to Robert's reference. This concept represents a calm state of the human soul, considering itself protected from all kinds of dangers [1], [2]. In this sense, this term was used in the lexicon of Western European peoples until the 17th century. In connection with the formation of state structures in later periods of history,

the concept of security means a state of rest [3], [4] resulting from the absence of real danger (physical and spiritual), which corresponds to the trends of state building and management of bodies in the material, social and economic spheres [5].

Security is understood in the sense of a situation where there is no danger. In the explanatory dictionary of the Uzbek language, it means "danger - fear, fear, panic, the possibility of a dangerous event or catastrophe, risk, anxiety, danger, anxiety, anxiety",

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHLI (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

"security" - the absence of danger, a non-dangerous situation, security is provided [6].

According to J.Sh. Tukhtabaev, "security is multifaceted, it is a state of protection from unpleasant, negative, harmful influences and dangers for the normal life and development of all mankind, the state and the economic system. Safety usually means the absence of potential conditions for causing harm, the prevention of danger, protection and reliability" [2].

### 2. Result

In our opinion, despite the fact that the concept of "security" is interpreted in different ways, in general, it represents the meaning of protection and preservation, freedom and guarantees of an individual, a group of people, the state and society from danger that arise in various spheres of human life.

The term "economic security" was first introduced by US President Franklin Roosevelt in connection with the establishment and implementation of an economic policy called the Wangi Course, aimed at overcoming the global crisis of 1929-1933. After that, in the 1930s, economic and security issues in the United States of America became the subject of serious scientific research in connection with the need to develop responses to the world economic crisis and its global threats. By the 1970s, in the developed world, "economics and security" began to be seen as an important part of national security. In the 1980s and 1990s, issues of economic and social security began to be widely discussed. "Southern Europe-Eastern Europe" was held in Lisbon in 1990. At the international conference "The European balance and its challenges", the director of the Institute for the Study of Security Problems in the Western European Union, Professor J. Ropper, proposed to supplement the concept of "military security aspect" with a socio-economic aspect. And the organization of the relevant institutional security structures achieved [1].

In our opinion, economic security is economic independence, stability and self-development, guaranteeing reliable protection of the important interests of the national economy, the individual, business entities, society and the state from external and internal threats and is a condition that provides the possibility of development.

Among these elements of the economy and security, i.e. forms, food security occupies a special place. Food satisfaction is the main goal [7]. Of course, the purpose of life for a person is not only to eat food and satisfy the need for it. Many other socio-economic, social, cultural, spiritual and other needs also exist [8]. But in order to achieve other high goals and satisfy many needs, a person must first of all satisfy his need for food. Therefore, ensuring food safety is important in the economy and human activities.

Providing the population with enough food and preventing hunger has always been an urgent problem in any country. For this reason, measures were taken to develop agriculture and create food reserves in order to prevent famine and ensure food security in various countries. For example, in ancient Egypt, Babylon, China and other countries, in order to prevent agriculture from falling into a crisis, farmers in fertile villages handed over a certain part of their crops to village elders or tax collectors as a tax. Part of the harvest is directed to the needs of the state, and the rest is sent to the reserve of special seeds, grains, rice and other nutritious crops in the amount of several houses [9].

The English bishop, economist Thomas Robert Malthus (1766-1834) was the first in economics and science to pay attention to the problem of providing the population with food and the causes of famine. In his theory, he concluded that the population is growing on the basis of a geometric progression, and food and delicacies are growing on the basis of an arithmetic progression [10].

According to the teachings of the physiocrats, the country's economy is focused only on agriculture. When they put forward this idea, they had in mind that this sector would play a priority role in the production of food needed by the population. The founder of physiocracy, François Quesnet (1694-1774), summarized his economic program in general terms in his work General Principles of the Economy and Policies of the Peasant State and Commentaries on Them (1758). In this work, he substantiated his basic idea that the earth is the only source of life. F. Kene published his work "Economic Table" in 1758 and founded the theory of reproduction. In 1766, he published the work "Analysis of the arithmetic formulas of an economic table showing the distribution of the annual expenses of the agricultural people" and improved the theory of reproduction. In this table, the population is divided into three classes: landowners (a class that does not produce anything); industrial owners; the producer belongs to the class of farmers. Also, the national economy is made up of agriculture and industry using the products of this sector. Agricultural products are processed in industry, distributed and consumed by the classes of society [11].

Differences in the interpretation and definition of food safety, their composition and components have expanded due to the aggravation of the problem of providing the population with food on a global scale at the beginning of the last century and during the Second World War. To solve this problem, efforts were made to create an international organization within the United Nations dealing with food and agriculture. In the period from May 18 to June 3, 1943 in Hot Springs, USA, a conference was organized on the creation of an international organization on food and agricultural issues with the participation of



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

representatives of 46 countries of the world. The conference gave recommendations to countries on the development of national agriculture and the reduction of customs duties on agricultural food products. It was also suggested that the name of the organization be the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO).

It should be noted that the Food Safety Authority is the main international body that determines food safety strategy. This committee was established in 1974 as an intergovernmental body to review and take action related to food safety. The Committee organizes international summits and forums dedicated to food safety issues. They define the tasks and activities planned for the near future to ensure food safety. Food safety assessment and measures are carried out by FAO in accordance with the guidelines established by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. UNICEF, the World Health Organization and other international organizations and associations are involved in these works.

The term food security came into international circulation after the grain crisis that occurred in 1972-1973. During this period, in the case of excess food production in developed countries, there was a famine among the population in the third world countries. This problem began to be discussed in the world community. In the context of these discussions, the UN General Assembly, held in December 1974, approved FAO's "International Commitments for Food Security in the World". However, the term "food safety" is not defined in this document [12].

In the 1994 UN Development Program, the basis of food security was defined as access to food, that is, the availability of food and their free access to it, as well as having sufficient solvency for this. The Rome Declaration on World Food Security was adopted at a high-level international meeting in Rome in November 1996. This declaration reaffirms that "everyone has the right to have access to food that is safe and nutritious for their health, in accordance with the right to food and adequate food" [13].

According to the definition given by V. G. Bulavko, P. G. Nikitenko and others, food security is the ability of the state to produce the necessary and sufficient amount of products of the required quality and range and to ensure the balance of supply and demand for domestic products in the consumer market, and under they should understand the ability

of agricultural enterprises, suppliers, quality work and marketing [14].

In our opinion, the effective and rational use of state agricultural, industrial, fiscal, monetary, regional, social, environmental, and transport policy instruments also creates sufficient institutional, socio-economic conditions and opportunities for ensuring food security, which is important in creativity.

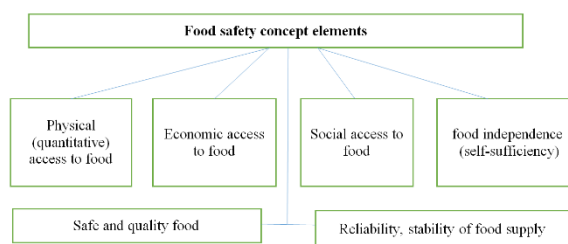
The concept of food security also requires the country to achieve independence and self-sufficiency in terms of basic food. Food independence means the possibility of providing the country's population with basic food products at the expense of domestic resources and production in an amount no less dangerous. Also, as recognized by a group of scientists led by V. A. Bogomolov, this concept also means that the country is able to provide itself with food without exceeding the dangerous criterion for the volume of food imports [15].

According to J.Sh. Tukhtabaev, "Food security is the ability of the country's population to independently provide themselves with basic food. It also means getting rid of over-reliance on food imports. The policy of the state to ensure food security focuses on the development of its own agricultural production and domestic markets, partly on the basis of the importation of food products from abroad to meet the population's need for food at an acceptable level" [2].

### 3. Discussion

Based on these opinions, in our opinion, the concept of food security is based on achieving food independence based on the self-sufficiency of the country in food products by harmonizing domestic sources of sustainable economic development and acceptable levels of imports necessary for citizens to have a reliable and stable physical (quantitative), economic and social access to high-quality and safe food products necessary to ensure an active and healthy lifestyle, in volumes not less than the expressed rational consumption norms established in the country.

In substantiating this definition, we have based physical (quantitative) and economic access to food, food independence, security and stability as important elements of the concept of food security, as defined in the Rome Declaration on Universal Food Security, and we consider it necessary to add to it social aspects (Picture 1).



Picture 1. Elements of a food safety concept [1]

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Economic provision of foodstuffs for all social strata of the population in sufficient quantity and quality means that every citizen of the country, regardless of his income, property and social status, has the necessary income to have a minimum set of food products. This means that it must be done. These opportunities and conditions are created by ensuring a sufficient level of income for the population and controlling a reasonable level of food prices. Also, the population will have to try to provide themselves with food in their farmsteads and farmsteads.

Social access to food means supporting the population in need of social protection, providing safe food in sufficient quantity and quality on the basis of financial support.

A safe food product meets established requirements and standards to ensure safe consumption. A safe food product contains substances necessary for the normal development of the human body and does not contain substances that are harmful to its health and the environment [16].

Noteworthy are the opinions of A.V. Malkhasuan on food safety. On the example of the Russian Federation, he established the following forms of food security: a high level of food security, guaranteed food security, additional food security, food dependence [17]. But it provides for the supply of food products by countries that are members of the Customs Union and the Common Economic Space (Euro-Osiuo) to justify additional food security. He explained that food dependence refers to dependence

on food imports from third countries, other than countries belonging to these unions.

#### 4. Conclusion

In our opinion, food security can be ensured in the following ways:

1) a high level of food security - the production of agricultural and food products is above the minimum level of consumption of the population and is provided and exported only by the country's producers;

2) food security is ensured - agriculture and food production mainly satisfy the internal needs of the state, and consumption exceeds the minimum level of the needs of the population and is provided by the country's producers;

3) food security, provided in an additional way - agriculture and food production do not fully satisfy the internal needs of the state, for consumption above the minimum level of needs of the population, food is required from foreign countries, products are partially imported;

4) food dependence;

5) agriculture and food production do not satisfy the internal needs of the state, the minimum level of consumption is provided by food imports from foreign (third) countries.

In conclusion, the goals and objectives of ensuring food safety in accordance with its different levels are formulated. But at the center of all of them is a person and his vital interests.

## References:

1. Tukhtabaev, J.Sh. (2022). *Economic security of the state*. Textbook, (p.546). Tashkent. TSUE.
2. Tukhtabaev, J.S., et al. (2023). *The role of industrial enterprises in ensuring food security*. IOP Conf. Series: Earth and Environmental Science 1043 (2022) 012023. doi:10.1088/1755-1315/1043/1/012023  
<https://iopscience.iop.org/article/10.1088/1755-1315/1043/1/012023>
3. (2001). *Economic security of economic systems*. Textbook, (p.8). Moscow: publishing house of the RAGS.
4. Bondarskaya, O.V., et al. (2022). *The use of public-private partnership in the machinebuilding industry*. AIP Conference Proceedings 2467, 040010 (2022). Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.1063/5.0093721>
5. Isroilova, F.M., et al. (2022). *Econometric modeling and forecasting of the increase in the export potential of small businesses and private enterprises in the Republic of Uzbekistan*. In The 6th International Conference on Future Networks & Distributed Systems (ICFNDS '22), 2022. ACM, New York, NY, USA. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.1145/3584202.3584246>
6. (2008). *Explanatory dictionary of the Uzbek language: more than 80,000 words and phrases*. J. IV. Order-Thank you. Editorial board. T. Mirzaev (leader) and others: Faculty of Language and Literature of the Russian Federation, (p.372). Tashkent: "National Encyclopedia of Uzbekistan" State Scientific Publishing House.
7. Tillaeva, B.R., et al. (2024). *Ways of development of agriculture and processing industry enterprises manufacturing cooperation*. IOP Conf. Series: Earth and Environmental Science 1043 (2022) 012024. doi:10.1088/1755-1315/1043/1/012024 Retrieved from

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>6.317</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>1.582</b>	<b>ПИИЦ</b> (Russia) = <b>3.939</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.771</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>7.184</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

- <https://iopscience.iop.org/article/10.1088/1755-1315/1043/1/012024>
- Bekmurodov, N.H., et al. (2022). *Econometric analysis of evaluation of investment projects implemented in the Northern Regions of Uzbekistan*. In The 6th International Conference on Future Networks & Distributed Systems (ICFNDS '22), 2022. ACM, New York, NY, USA. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.1145/3584202.3584311>
  - Yadgarov, A., et al. (2021). "Reforms on the development of the livestock sector and insurance protection in Uzbekistan", 2021. "E3S Web of Conferences". Retrieved from <https://www.scopus.com/inward/record.uri?eid=2-s2.0-85103441335&doi=10.1051%2fe3sconf%2f202124412012&partnerID=40&md5=57e09e1daf4963a10131b30f8ee02f5f>
  - Ergashev, H.N. (2018). *Importance of insurance in ensuring food safety in Uzbekistan*. Collection of scientific lectures of the inter-scientific-practical conference of higher educational institutions on the topic "The role and role of small business and private entrepreneurship in increasing food reserves: problems and opportunities". May 19, 2018, (p.257). Tashkent.
  - Bogomolova, V. A. (2009). *Economic security: a textbook for students of universities studying in the specialties of economics and management*, 2nd ed., revised. And extra, (p.104). Moscow: Unity-DANA.
  - Abulkosimov, H.P., et al. (2017). *Explanatory dictionary of economic terms and concepts*, (pp.274-275). Tashkent: "ABU MATBUOT-CONSALT".
  - (1997). *Rome Declaration on World Food Security*. *APK: economics, management*, M., 1997. No. 2, pp. 3-7.; FAO UN Retrieved from <http://www.cawater-info.net/bk/14-4-2.htm>
  - Nikitenko, P.G., & Bulavko, V.G. (2009). *Economic security: theory, methodology, practice / under scientific*. Institute of Economics of the National Academy of Sciences of Belarus, (pp.175-177). Minsk: Law and Economics.
  - Saidova, N.I. (2020). *Theoretical aspects and priorities of food safety*: Dissertation, Tashkent.
  - Razakova, B.S., et al. (2021). *Econometric Evaluation of Influential Factors to Increasing Labor Efficiency in Textile Enterprises*. *Webology*, Volume 18, Special Issue on Information. Retrieval and Web Search, 2021. <https://www.webology.org/datacms/articles/20210129114502amWEB18024.pdf>
  - Malkhasyan, A.V. (2014). *Agrarian and legal problems in the field of food security*: Dissertation, (pp. 33-34). Moscow.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 19.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



Umid Achilovich Kamalov

Termez State University  
Teacher of Russian linguistics  
Termez, Republic of Uzbekistan,  
+998915795885  
[umid-k@mail.ru](mailto:umid-k@mail.ru)

## DESIRABLE SENTENCES IN UZBEK

**Abstract:** The article offers a general overview of desirable sentences in the modern Uzbek language. Special attention is paid to the desirable mood of the Uzbek language with the affix "SA". The desired mood can act as an optative. More than 10 literary sources were considered in the study, and as a result, it allowed us to make a legitimate analysis of the desirable sentences of the Uzbek language.

**Key words:** desirable sentences, desire, mood, modality, sentence, syntax.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Kamalov, U. A. (2023). Desirable sentences in Uzbek. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 131-136.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-20> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.20>

**Scopus ASCC:** 1203.

## ЖЕЛАТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ В УЗБЕКСКОМ ЯЗЫКЕ

**Аннотация:** В статье предлагается обобщенный обзор желательных предложений в современном узбекском языке. Особое внимание уделяется желательному наклонению узбекского языка с аффиксом «SA». Желательное наклонение могут выступать в значении оптатива. В исследовании были рассмотрены более 10 литературных источников и в итоге это позволило сделать правомерный анализ желательных предложений узбекского языка.

**Ключевые слова:** желательные предложения, желание, наклонение, модальность, предложение, синтаксис.

### Введение

Узбекский язык – это национальный язык узбекского народа, относящийся к тюркской группе языков. 21 октября 1989 года узбекский язык получил статус государственного языка. Узбекский язык, являющийся ярким и бесценным наследием многовековой культурной, научной, просветительской и художественной мысли, интеллектуального потенциала узбекского народа, является одним из богатейших и древнейших языков мира.

После провозглашения Независимости Республики Узбекистан 31 августа 1991 года появилась возможность в полной мере упорядочить систему звуков, правописания узбекского языка и вскоре 2 сентября 1993 года был принят Закон Верховного Совета Республики

Узбекистан «О введении узбекского алфавита, основанного на латинской графике». Во второй статье вышеуказанного закона излагается, что при введении узбекского алфавита, как основанного на латинской графике, сохраняются необходимые условия для овладения и использования арабской графики и кириллицы, на которых создано бесценное духовное наследие, являющееся национальной гордостью народа Узбекистана [18]. До 1989 года понятие «государственный язык» не использовалось, а узбекский язык имел статус межнационального языка. За ним были закреплены все необходимые для государственного языка функции. Он широко применялся в сфере делового общения, образования, он был языком науки и научного общения, использовался в СМИ, в

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

судопроизводстве и т.д. Удивительно, что если переход в 1940 году был связан с борьбой против пантюркизма, то как происходил обратный процесс - по переходу с кириллицы на латиницу в Узбекистане начиная с 1993 года, имело абсолютно противоположный, без преувеличения шокирующий эффект. В силу этого, переход с кириллицы на латиницу символизировал для нас независимость Республики Узбекистан, после обретения независимости начали восстанавливать историю, своё прошлое, свою национальную культуру и международные связи в мировой арене, а также «в Республике Узбекистан обеспечиваются условия всем гражданам для изучения государственного языка и уважительное отношение к языкам наций и народностей, проживающих на ее территории, создаются условия для развития этих языков» [19].

Синтаксис узбекского языка – это раздел грамматики, изучающий правила грамматического оформления предложения и словосочетания. В синтаксисе изучается слово, но оно изучается не как лексическая единица или часть речи, а как тот или иной член предложения [16, с. 160].

В узбекском языке наблюдается согласование между подлежащим и сказуемым, причем согласование в лице и числе в этом случае строго обязательно только для первого и второго лица.

### Анализ предмета

Согласование в лице определения с определяемым существительным наблюдается в специфическом узбекском сочетании изафета, или согласованного определения в родительном падеже (*qaratqich aniqlovchi*). В нем это согласование получает свое выражение с помощью суффикса родительного падежа – *ning* и аффикса принадлежности при определяемом слове: *O'qituvchining kitobi*.

В русском языке сочетаниям типа *o'qituvchining kitobi* соответствует сочетание с несогласованным определением в родительном падеже (книга ученика) отличающееся от узбекского порядком слов.

Изафетная связь – это такая связь между зависимым и господствующим словами, при которой смысловые взаимоотношения слов выражаются формой господствующего слова. Но иногда зависимое слово тоже должно стоять в определенной форме. В этом случае связь будет определенной, двусторонней. Само слово изафет (от араб, *идофат*, буквально присоединение) в арабском грамматике сочетание определяемого с определением в родительном падеже, в турецком грамматике – сочетание определяемого, принимающего аффикс принадлежности 3 го лица, с определением в родительном падеже.

Фундаментальные понятия синтаксиса – это понятия о системе синтаксических единиц, о синтаксических (и средствах связи и о грамматической синтаксической) семантике.

Предложение служит для выражения высказывания, оно является главной единицей современного синтаксиса. Словосочетание – один из компонентов предложения, оно представляет собой вспомогательную единицу.

Предложение – представляет собой минимальную единицу человеческой речи, выражающую определенную мысль. Мысль может выражаться по-разному: через простые или сложные предложения, с помощью вопросительных, повелительных, восклицательных предложений и т.д. Но в какой бы форме ни было высказывание, в нем выражается определенная цель человека.

Синтаксическая связь – это формально-семантическая связь между компонентами синтаксической единицы. В узбекском языке выделяют 2 вида синтаксической связи: 1) *teng bog'lanish* (сочинительная связь); 2) *tobe bog'lanish* (подчинительная связь).

Исследуя желательные предложения в узбекском языке, мы проанализировали историю развития современного узбекского языка. В данной исследовании не только была рассмотрена узбекская грамматика, но и сопоставительная типология русского и узбекского языков.

При сравнительном анализе грамматического строя русского и узбекского языков, автор пособия А.И.Абражеева даёт такое определение: «Как в русском языке, так и в узбекском предложении в зависимости от цели и характера высказывания делятся на повествовательные, вопросительные и восклицательные» [1, с. 108].

Глубокое и всестороннее рассмотрение грамматического строя узбекского литературного языка содержится в трудах А.Н. Кононова. В грамматике исследованы и описаны следующие виды предложений по цели высказывания (в плане семантической классификации): «1) повествовательные (положительные, отрицательные, выражающие возможность или невозможность совершения действия); 2) вопросительные (собственно вопросительные, риторические, вопросительно-побудительные); 3) модальные (побудительные, желательные, условные, долженствовательные); 4) восклицательные» [2, с. 345]. Нужно отметить то, что в учебной пособий «Сравнительного анализа грамматического строя русского и узбекского языков», имеются 4 вида предложения по цели высказывания, мы подробно заострим наше исследование на 3 вид предложение. «Модальные предложения – это такие предложения, выражающие побуждение, желание,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

долженствование и условие. Желательные предложения – это такие предложения, выражающие желания, устремления; сказуемое этих предложений представлено формами желательного наклонения» [2, с. 347]. Отсюда следует, что рассмотрение желательных предложений с формами желательного наклонения узбекского языка уже проявлялось в учебном пособии 1960 года издания.

### Методология исследования

Желание – это состояние стремления, когда цель желания неясна. Для достижения цели желания понимается как волевое состояние [20].

Ученый В.В. Решетов даёт следующие определение об общих сведениях предложений в узбекском языке: «В узбекском языке как монолог, так и диалог состоят из отдельных предложений. Предложения могут быть вопросительными (узб. «So‘roq gap»), восклицательными (узб. «Undov gap») и повествовательными (узб. «Darak gap»)» [4, с. 211]. Автор учебника исследовал в сопоставление изучаемых грамматических явлений.

Для более полной характеристики рассматриваемого вопроса были изучены следующие учебные пособия: современный узбекский литературный язык (Hozirgi o‘zbek adabiy tili. Sintaksis.1966) [6] и грамматика узбекского языка (O‘zbek tili grammatikasi. 1976) [5].

В современном узбекском языке 1966 года издания выделяются простые предложения по содержанию и интонации на четыре типа: 1) повествовательные предложения; 2) вопросительные предложения; 3) побудительные предложения; 4) восклицательные предложения. Каждый тип предложения имеет свое собственное содержание, отличается от других типов речи грамматическими признаками и интонацией [6, с. 38].

Также в грамматике узбекского языка (1976): предложения выделяют по цели высказывания на четыре типа: 1) повествовательные предложения; 2) вопросительные предложения; 3) побудительные предложения; 4) восклицательные предложения. Каждый тип предложения отличается от других типов предложений своим содержанием, грамматическими признаками и интонацией» [5, с. 99].

Дальнейший ход рассуждений в грамматике узбекского языка (O‘zbek tili grammatikasi. 1976): «побудительные предложения (Buuruq gaplar) выражают различные намерения человека, такие как желание, просьба, совет, команда» [5, с.108].

Исходя из выше отмеченного, в грамматике узбекского языка даются следующие подтипы к содержанию побудительного предложения:

1. Приказ (Buuruq);

2. Совет (Maslahat);

3. Просьба (Itimos);

4. **Желание (Orzu-istak);**

5. Удивление (Hayratlanish);

6. Забота, внимание (G‘amxo‘rlik);

7. Побуждение (Tashviq);

8. Сомнение, забота (Gumon, tashvish);

9. Волнение (Hayajon);

10. Ярость, угроза (G‘azab, do‘q) [5, с. 110-111].

А в грамматике узбекского языка (1976) строение предложения по цели высказывания в значении желания выявляется в побудительных предложениях.

Несомненная важность этих исследований состоит в том, что побудительные предложения с семантикой желания (Orzu-istak), в итоге мы можем рассматривать как «желательное предложение». Однако, стоит отметить то, что в грамматике узбекского языка 1976 года издания не выделяли предложения по цели высказывания как «желательные предложения».

Идентичное явление представляет собой в грамматике узбекского языка (O‘zbek tili grammatikasi. 1996). В грамматике узбекского языка предложения можно разделить на четыре типа: 1) повествовательные предложения; 2) вопросительные предложения; 3) побудительные предложения 4) восклицательные предложения. Каждый тип предложения отличается от других типов предложений своим содержанием, грамматическими признаками и тоном.

Исследовав предложение по цели высказывания в грамматике узбекского языка 1976 и 1996 года издания, можно сделать вывод о том, что в обоих грамматиках не наблюдалась изменение и не отмечалось о желательных предложениях. (1976, 1996).

И, тем не менее, в «Теоретической грамматике узбекского языка» 1995 года издания, мы обнаружили следующие определение: «Предложения делятся в соответствии по цели высказывания на следующие типы: 1) повествовательные предложения, 2) вопросительные предложения, 3) побудительные предложения, 4) желательные предложения» [3, с. 47].

Стоит заметить, что в данном учебнике предложение по цели высказывания выделяются «желательные предложения».

В учебной пособий современного узбекского языка (2009) излагается следующая теория. По цели высказывания считается чисто речевое явление. Говорящий не только выражает мысль в процессе речи, но и преследует определенную цель. Предложение разнообразно в зависимости от цели, которую преследует говорящий: 1) повествовательное предложение; 2) вопросительное предложение; 3) побудительное

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

предложение [17, с. 38].

Обратим внимание на «Практикум узбекского языка», следует учесть то, что виды предложения по цели высказывания делятся на три типа: повествовательное предложение, вопросительное предложение, побудительное предложение [12, с. 202]. То же самое представлены и в «Современном узбекском литературном языке» (2003) [10, с. 199]; «Узбекском языке» (2008) [13, с. 198].

В рамках обозначенного подхода нами были исследованы как характеризуются предложения по цели высказывания в учебниках узбекского языка: «Повествовательное предложение (Предложение с целью что-то сообщить). Вопросительные предложения. (Предложение с целью уточнения, вопрос). Побудительное (повелительное) предложение (Предложение с целью приказать, побудить). Желательное предложение (желание, предложение о цели желания)». Также в данном учебнике, мы можем проанализировать что любое высказывания в нашей речи используется для передачи следующих целей: «1) «Xabar berish» сообщить; 2) «So‘rash, aniqlash» спрашивать, определять; 3) «Buyurish, undash» повелевать, побуждать, приказывать; 4) «Istak, xohish bildirish» выражение желания или хотение (оптатив).

Следовательно, в соответствии с целью высказывания предложения в учебнике узбекского языка, различают типы повествовательного предложения, вопросительного предложения, повелительного

предложения и желательного предложения». [14, с. 41].

Следует выделить в Толковом словаре лингвистических терминов «Желательное предложение (Istak gap) – выражает содержание желательности, а также данное предложения выраженное глаголом при помощи аффикса сказуемости – SA» [11, с. 52].

В Толковом словаре лингвистических терминов, мы можем заметить проявление синтетической формы определение желательных предложений (Istak gap) – это аффикс сказуемости «SA», как отмечается в учебной пособий Н.Эркабоевой: «Условное наклонение – образуется с помощью формы глагола и аффикса – «SA», который выражает действие и состояние, а также желание, которое является условием выполнения или невыполнения другого действия и состояния. Аффикс – «SA» указывает на значение будущего времени» [9, с. 261].

Современном русском языке в традиционной грамматике насчитывается три наклонения: 1) Изъявительное; 2) Повелительное; 3) Сослагательное, а в современном узбекском языке четыре наклонения: 1) Xabar mayli (Изъявительное наклонение); 2) Buyuruq-istak mayli (Желательно-повелительное наклонение); 3) Shart mayli (Условное наклонение); 4) Maqsad mayli (Намерительное наклонение).

В узбекском языке категория желательно-повелительное наклонение образуется с помощью личных окончаний, смотрите Таблицу 1:

Таблица 1. Образования аффиксов с желательными наклонениями в узбекском языке

Лицо	Аффиксы единственного числа	Примеры	Аффиксы множественного числа	Примеры
1	- AY (IN),	<i>Boray, Olay</i>	-AYLIK	<i>Boraylik, Olaylik</i>
	-Y (IN)	<i>O‘qiy,</i>	-YLIK	<i>O‘qiylik,</i>
2	-GIN	<i>Borgin, Olgin</i>	NG	<i>Boring, Oling</i>
	-GIL	<i>Borgil</i>	NGIZ(LAR), -IG	<i>Boringiz,</i>
3	INGIZLAR	<i>Olingizlar</i>	-SIN(LAR)	<i>Borsinlar, Olsinlar</i>

Формы желательно-повелительного наклонения глаголов обозначают повеление, побуждение, совет, просьбу и т.д.

Форма 1 л. ед. ч. образуется от основы глагола с конечным согласным с помощью аффикса -ay(in) и от основы с конечным гласным -y(in), напр., boray «пойду-ка я» (bor- «ходить», «идти»), ishlay «поработаю-ка» (ishlay- «работать»), bormaу «не пойду-ка» (borma- «не ходить»).

Форма 1 л. мн. ч. образуется, соответственно, от формы единственного числа посредством

аффикса -lik, напр., boraylik «ну пошли».

Форма 2 л. ед. ч. совпадает, как мы знаем, с основой глагола и обозначает грубое повеление, напр., yoz «пиши», бор «иди» и т. п. Аффикс -gin (или -gil) усиливает повеление, например: yozgin «пиши», borgin «иди».

Аффикс множественного числа -lar подчеркивает обращение ко многим лицам, например: o‘tiringlar! «садитесь!».

Следует добавить, что желательные предложения в процессе речи, когда вы хотите выразить окружающим о своих желаниях то, в

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

соответствии с этой целью вы выбираете форму предложения, которая выражается глаголом с обязательным условно-желательным наклонением [8, с. 322]

### Анализ и результаты

В научной исследовательской работе дадим следующее определение к нижеуказанным терминам:

Оптатив – это желательное наклонение, в современной русской морфологии выделяется формой сослагательного (условного) наклонения, а в желательных предложениях со значением желательности;

Оптативный – желательный, очень ожидаемый, являющиеся предметом желание, проявляющиеся как средства выражения оптатива функционально-семантических типов в категориях оптативности;

Оптативность – выражающая значение желание, пожелания, стремление с формой желательного наклонения, встречающиеся в лексике, морфологии и синтаксисе как семантической функции желательности;

Оптативная единица – это единичная лексема со значением желательности (оптативности). Она

считается совокупностью всех парадигматических форм т.е. словоформ одного слова или минимального лексического значения;

Оптативная лексика – это такие слова в котором замаскированы значения желательности (оптативность), а также могут быть и в омонимичных формах.

Категория оптативности – это языковой раздел, в котором исследуется оптативность с точки зрения модальной категории, т.е. употребляется в значениях желания и имеет все характеристики грамматического строя: сослагательного наклонения, частицы бы, и функции синтаксиса в организации ОП.

В результате исследования был получен материал, анализ которого позволил сделать следующий вывод, что предложения по цели высказывания в современном узбекском языке делятся на 4 типа. Отсюда следует заметить, что в узбекском языкознании выделяется так называемые «желательное предложение».

Сущность вышеизложенного сводится к тому, что «желательное предложение» в современном узбекском языке можно употреблять как термин синоним: «оптативным предложениям» в узбекском языкознании.

## References:

1. Abrazheev, A.I. (1962). *Sravnitel'nyj analiz grammaticheskogo stroja russkogo i uzbekskogo jazykov (fonetika, morfologija i sintaksis)*. Uchebnoe posobie. Izdatel'stvo SamGU. (p.186). Samarkand.
2. Kononov, A. N. (1960). *Grammatika sovremennogo uzbekskogo literaturnogo jazyka*. (p.447). L.: Izdatel'stvo AN SSSR.
3. Maхmudov, N., & Nurmonov, A. (1995). *Ўzbek tilining nazarij grammatikasi*. (p.288). Toshkent: Ўkituvchi.
4. Reshetov, V.V. (1965). *Osnovy fonetiki, morfologii i sintaksisa uzbekskogo jazyka*. (p.244). Toshkent: «Uchitel'».
5. (1976). *Ўzbek tili grammatikasi*. II tom. (p.560). Toshkent: «Fan».
6. (1966). *Xozirgi ўzbek adabij tili*. 2, Sintaksis / [F.A. Abduraxmonovning umumij taxriri ostida. Ўzbekiston SSR Fanlar Akademijasi, A. S. Pushkin nomidagi til va adabijot Instituti/ (p.503). Toshkent : "Fan" nashr.
7. (1966). *Xozirgi ўzbek adabij tili*. 2, Sintaksis / [F.A. Abduraxmonovning umumij taxriri ostida. Ўzbekiston SSR Fanlar Akademijasi, A. S. Pushkin nomidagi til va adabijot Instituti/ (p.503). Toshkent: "Fan" nashr.
8. Asqarova, M., Yunusov, R., Yo'ldoshev, M., & Muhamedova, D. (2006). *O'zbek tili praktikumi: O'quv qo'llanma*. (pp.160-161). Toshkent: «IQTISOD-MOLIYA».
9. Erkaboyeva, N. (2019). *O'zbek tilidan ma'ruzalar to'plami*. (p.496). Toshkent: «YOSH KUCH».
10. Rahimov, S., & Umurqulov, B. (2003). *Hozirgi o'zbek adabiy tili: Darslik / (p.272)*. Toshkent: "Moliya" nashriyoti.
11. Mahkamov, N., & Ermatov, I. (2013). *Tilshunoslik terminlarining izohli lugati: umumta'lim maktablari hamda akademik litsey va kasb-hunar kollejlari uchun*. O'zbekiston Respublikasi Fanlar akademiyasi Alisher Navoiy nomidagi Til va adabiyot instituti. (p.144). Toshkent: Fan.
12. Asqarova, M., Yunusov, R., Yo'ldoshev, M., & Muhamedova, D. (2006). *O'zbek tili praktikumi: O'quv qo'llanma*. (p.304). Toshkent: «IQTISOD-MOLIYA».



**Impact Factor:**

**ISRA** (India) = **6.317**  
**ISI** (Dubai, UAE) = **1.582**  
**GIF** (Australia) = **0.564**  
**JIF** = **1.500**

**SIS** (USA) = **0.912**  
**PIHII** (Russia) = **3.939**  
**ESJI** (KZ) = **8.771**  
**SJIF** (Morocco) = **7.184**

**ICV** (Poland) = **6.630**  
**PIF** (India) = **1.940**  
**IBI** (India) = **4.260**  
**OAJI** (USA) = **0.350**

---

13. Choriyev, T., Safarova, N., & Ismatova, Sh. (2008). *O'zbek tili: O'quv qo'llanma*. - Tashkent: "IQTISOD-MOLIYA", 2008, - 296-b.
14. (2019). *Ona tili: o'rta maktablarning 8-sinfi uchun darslik*. (p.144). Tashkent: Cho'lpon nomidagi NMIU.
15. Rahimov, S., & Umurqulov, B. (2003). *Hozirgi o'zbek adabiy tili: Darslik*. (p.171). Tashkent: "Moliya" nashriyoti.
16. Rasulov, R., & Mirazizov, A. (2009). *O'zbek tili*. (p.240). Tashkent: «Fan va texnologiya».
17. Sayfullayeva, R.R., Mengliyev, B.R., Boqiyeva, G.H., Qurbonova, M.M., Yunusova, Z.Q., & Abuzalova, M.Q. (2009). *Hozirgi o'zbek adabiy tili. O'quv qo'llanma*. (p.416). T., «Fan va texnologiya».
18. (1993). *Zakon Respubliki Uzbekistan «O vvedenii uzbekskogo alfavita, osnovannogo na latinskoj grafike» №931-XII ot 02.09.1993 goda* [Elektronnyj resurs] Retrieved from <https://lex.uz/docs/112283>
19. (1457). *Zakon Respubliki Uzbekistan «O gosudarstvennom jazyke» № 167-I ot 21.12.1995 goda* [Elektronnyj resurs] Retrieved from <https://lex.uz/docs/121433#121457>
20. (n.d.). Retrieved from <https://uz.wikipedia.org/wiki/Istak>.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 19.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



Gayrat Namazovich Arapov  
Termez state university  
Researcher, Uzbekistan  
[gayratarapov@gmail.com](mailto:gayratarapov@gmail.com)

## INTERPRETATION OF THE LIGHT INDUSTRY LEXICON IN MODERN LINGUISTICS

**Abstract:** This article talks about the linguistic research of the lexicon of light industry, the views put forward by linguists who have conducted scientific research on the lexicon of the industry, its various interpretations, analysis, and the common names of relevant subjects, events, and processes.

**Key words:** limited words and phrases, cotton, silk, linen, hemp, jute fibers, animal skin, wool, artificial fibers, light industry.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Arapov, G. N. (2023). Interpretation of the light industry lexicon in modern linguistics. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 137-141.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-21> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.21>

**Scopus ASCC:** 1203.

### Introduction

In recent years, the growing interest in the lexicon of the field, including terminology, is determined by the development of the relevant field. Because, according to D. Buronova, "the display of terms is at the same time a display of production achievements that determine the level of development of textile and light industry products of any country".

Industry, that is, production, plays an important role in the economy and society of every country. In the "Annotated Dictionary of the Uzbek Language" under the editorship of A. Madvaliyev, the concept of industry is "a network of the national economy that includes processing raw materials, mining underground resources, creating means of production and consumer goods, etc. i; defined as "industry". The word industry together with the words *production* and *industry* forms a synonymous line.

According to Hornby's Oxford Advanced Learner's dictionary of Current English: "Light industry – industry that produces small or light objects such as things used in the house" – "Light industry" means the industry that produces small or light items used for household purposes.

A.N. In Azrilian's "Большой экономический словарь" the concept of light industry is explained as follows: "Промышленность, легкая – условное

наименование отраслей хозяйства, производящих одежду, обувь, головные уборы и некоторые другие потребительские товары. Названы в противовес отраслям тяжелой индустрии".

The definition of light industry in the "National Encyclopedia of Uzbekistan" is given as follows: "Light industry is a set of industries specializing in the production of a wide range of consumer products and goods from various raw materials. Both preliminary processing of raw materials and production of finished products are carried out in light industry. Cotton, silk, linen, hemp, jute fibers, animal skin, wool, artificial fibers, artificial leather are used as raw materials in light industry. Its main industries are textile, tailoring, tanning, fur, and footwear industries. Light industrial products are also used in furniture, aviation, automobile, food and other industries, agriculture, transportation, health and other industries.

Based on the definitions given above, we define the concept of light industry as follows: light industry is considered to be industries that process agricultural raw materials and are closely related to the production of ready-made consumer goods. it includes textiles, sewing and knitting, leather-shoes, clothes and fur.

### Analysis of Subject Matters

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

It should be noted that the lexicon of light industry occupies a special place in the language layer. On the one hand, it reflects the special terminology of the relevant field, and on the other hand, it is actively used in everyday general language, because light industrial products have become an indispensable attribute of everyday life. Based on this, the light industry lexicon can be divided into two types from the point of view of application:

1) words and phrases whose use is limited to the relevant field. Masalan,

In English: *weft brake, chain weave, lappet hook*;

In Uzbek: *arqoq, tanda, noto 'qima, geotekstil*;

In Russian: *плоттер, носовая машина, петлитель, бегунки*;

The lexicon of light industry belonging to this group is mainly used directly in professional, as well as scientific and, partially, official-departmental speech. For example,

In English: *The Weft Master SFB weft brake has been in use on projectile and rapier weaving machines worldwide for many years* (THE TEXTILE MAGAZINE, 2020, vol.62, p.42).

In Uzbek: *O'zbekiston tabiiy tolalar ilmiy-tadqiqot instituti hamda "Yodgorlik" ishlab chiqarish korxonasi hamkorlikda adras (tanda –100 foiz ipak va arqoq – 100 foiz paxta) matosi tajriba usulida ishlab chiqildi* (Eni 1,25 metrlik adras ishlab chiqarish yo'lga qo'yildi // Xalq so'zi, online, 06.03.2019).

In Russian:

*Поэтому уже в конце февраля растения рекомендуется связать шпагатом и неплотно обернуть мешковиной, светлой хлопчатобумажной тканью или крафт-бумагой в несколько слоев* (Садоводу – на заметку // Наука и жизнь, 2007).

2) Words and phrases of general literary character. For example:

*cotton – paxta – хлопок; thread – ip – нить ; leather – teri – кожа; silk – ipak – шелк; trousers – shim – брюки; tailor – tikuvchi – швея; blanket – choyshab – одеяло; wool – jun – шерсть; shirt – ko'ylak – рубашка va h.k.*

The lexicon of light industry, which makes up this group, can be found in speech characteristic of all functional styles of the language. For example:

In English: *"For the next Chain Stitch, push the needle back into the fabric where the thread emerged* (How to work chain stitch // Love Embroidery. Issue 4, 2020, p.44)".

In Uzbek: *"Azizxon non tashlanayotgan so'ri chetidan choyshabni qayirib omonatgina o'tirdi"* (S.Ahmad. Ufq).

In Russian:

*Расчесываю волосы на голове, смотрюсь в зеркало, брею себя бритвой, ... подбираю галстук к рубашке, понимаю, что мне идёт, а что не идёт, потому что у меня волосы определённого*

*цвета и глаза... (Евгений Гришковец. Одновременно (2004)).*

According to X.D.Paluanova, terms are "such words that their semantic structure is satisfied with the content related to a specific branch of knowledge". Terms serve to specifically name the aspects of objects and events related to a certain field, and their mutual relations. As terminology studies terms, the proportion of terms and concepts determines its essence.

The terms of light industry are cotton, silk, linen, hemp, jute fibers, animal skins, wool, in the branches of light industry, such as textile, tailoring, tanning, fur industry, footwear industry and others. A special word used to name the objects, phenomena and processes, their signs and characteristics, related to the preliminary processing of various raw materials, such as artificial fibers, artificial leather, and the production of a wide range of consumer products and articles are word combinations. The following examples of light industrial terms in English, Uzbek and Russian languages can be given: *dye – bo'yoq – краситель; batist – batist – батист; bobbin – g'altak – шпулька; camel hair – tuyu juni – верблюжья шерсть; carding machine – tarash mashinasi – кардочесальная машина; chiffon – shifon – шифон; cocoon stripping – pilla tozalash – зачистка кокона; velvet – baxmal – бархат; denim – jinsi matosi – джинсовая ткань; design paper – dizayn qog'ozi – дизайнерская бумага; offset printing – ofset bosib chiqarish – офсетная печать; creasing – burmalash – биговка; fur – mo'yna – мех and etc.*

As D.K.Yefimov noted, the most commonly used terms are those that do not belong to a narrow field. According to the scientist, they form an important part of the general literary vocabulary and are used in all functional aspects of the literary language.

In our opinion, D.K. Yefimov caused confusion by understanding the terms under narrow field terms. We believe that narrow field terms should not be equated with terms. General and narrow field terms should be contrasted with general literary terms.

Special light industry terms are not included in the lexicon of light industry, which has a universal character. It is understood that the structure of this group consists of terms of light industry. Such terms include words and expressions related to light industry in English, Uzbek and Russian, such as: *socks – pauroq – носки; pillow – yostiқ – подушка; carpet – gilam – ковёр; jacket – jaket – жакет; jeans – jinsi – джинсы; cotton – paxta – хлопок; shoes – tuflı – туфли; napkin – salfetka – салфетка; basket – savat – корзина; bag – qop – сумка; skirt – yubka – юбка; scissors – qaychi – ножницы; cap – qalpoq – кепка; gloves – qo'lqop – перчатки; iron – daxmol – утюг; atlas – atlas – атлас; jealousy – jalyuzi – жалюзи and etc.*

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

So, the composition of the light industry lexicon consists of special field terms and terms, which in this dissertation work are the subjects, events and processes related to the preliminary processing of various light industry raw materials and the production of ready-made consumer products and goods, their signs and is considered as a special (scientific-professional) and general consumer nomination.

It should be noted that today the lexicon of light industry is not studied in a special monographic way not only in English, Uzbek and Russian linguistics, but also in the theory and practice of other languages. In the few existing linguistic works related to the topic, opinions were mainly expressed about the lexicon or terminology of the textile branch of the light industry.

### Research Methodology

In particular, M. Soliyeva paid attention to the following among issues related to textile terminology:

- deficiencies in the naming of textile objects, including incomprehensible and inappropriate terms;
- classification of textile terms;
- semantic, structural, phonological and etymological description of textile terms;
- regional variants of the textile lexicon;
- ways and methods of formation of textile terminology;
- regulation and standardization of textile terminology;
- creating a dictionary of textile terms;
- paronymy of suffixes in textile terminology;
- an antonymy of textile terms;
- verbal and non-verbal signs in textile terminology;
- translation issues of textile terms;
- phenomenon of metaphorization and metonymy in textile terminology.

In addition to M. Soliyeva's scope of issues of textile terminology, in our opinion, it is necessary to include the issues of linguistic and cultural characteristics of textile terms, which are neglected and waiting for their solution.

M.A. Soliyeva's dissertation research revealed the structural-semantic aspects of textile terms in Tajik and English materials. Based on the analysis of the scientific works on the subject, the author concluded that the largest amount of borrowed words observed in the terminology of textile merchandising are terms representing the names of fibers and fabrics, and most of them are so adapted in the grammatical and lexical system of the absorbing language that the speakers of the language use them from a foreign language. determines that they do not realize that they have entered.

M.A. Soliyeva said that the concept apparatus of the textile network includes general scientific, general technical, inter-sectoral, general consumer and direct

textile terms, in particular, the general consumer lexicon is an important source in the formation of English textile terminology (semantic method of term formation), which is mixed argues that textile terms in Tajik and English are structured using verbalization, substantivization, and adjectivization word formation models.

One of the remarkable conclusions of the scientist is the interpretation of the textile lexicon category as a species category. Terminology means that textile terminology is expressed using different grammatical categories (noun, verb, adjective, adverb) in different languages.

Based on this, we can assume that in the context of our topic, the verbalization of categorical meanings such as objectivity, procedural and non-procedural signs of objects, the sign of a certain sign in terms of textile terminology and general light industry lexicon of English, Uzbek and Russian languages is a linguistic and cultural issue. becomes unique. Because in the language of every nation and linguistic and cultural society, the people's view of the world is reflected.

L.V. Besschetnova, Z.J. Aukhadiyeva, J.M. Utesbayeva, M.N. Nizamova emphasized the need to take into account syntagmatic relations of textile terms when teaching Russian language to future engineers, terminological units form complex term combinations from the lexical-semantic point of view, spread with common words, enter into various relations in the context of a sentence they stopped about. According to the authors, syntagmatic relations are subject to the general rules of categorical association, taking into account the syntagmatics of this or that linguistic pattern allows to determine the number of conditional and possible spreaders of the nuclear component. This, in turn, in our opinion, helps to identify lexical-semantic groups within the field terminology.

D. Buronova considers the issues of the development of Uzbek terminology in the field of textile industry, and draws attention to the necessary factors for Uzbek terms to be included in the ranks of world terms. The following factors are studied by the scientist as factors determining the development of Uzbek textile terms on a global scale:

1) the development, spread and speed of assimilation of terms is closely related to the presentation of goods and other products of the producing country (exhibition, fair, display of clothing models, etc.);

2) The development of various branches of textile and light industry in Uzbekistan at the same time enriches the linguistic aspects of the development of terms on a global scale, because any country tries to enrich and spread its languages, and the country of production takes an advanced position in this;

3) the number and variety of offered products are perceived by consumers through the names of these products. It is understood that the description of the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

terms is related to the name of the product. Traditionally, historically, scientists have studied this phenomenon based on the principles of Latin-Greek terms, but the experience of the world's manufacturers in recent years shows that if the brand language is named based on its internal capabilities, popularization has the opportunity.

Based on the above, D. Buronova divides textile terms into universal, semi-popular terms and cross-linguistic synonymous variants of terms. Universal terms are included in many language systems and are used in almost all languages of the world: *material, design, sweater, jumper, jeans*. Semi-popular textile terms exist in only a few languages: *adras, shoxi, banoros, beqasam, xon atlas, to'n, chopon, yaktak*. Cross-linguistic synonymous variants of terms consist of different language terms with their own form or method of expression at the ethical level of languages: *atomizer – распылитель – purkagich; band – тесьма, лента, ремень – jiyak, kamar; blend – смешивать – aralashtirmoq, qoramoq; carpet – ковер – gilam; cloth – ткань, платье – mato, gazlama, kiyim; cotton – хлопок – paxta; cut – кроить, резать – bichmoq, bichish; dress – одежда – kiyim, libos; fibre – волокно – tola; foot-wear, boots, shoes – обувь – poyabzal, oyoq kiyim* and etc.

As we can see, D. Buronova approaches the research of the terms of the textile sector of the light industry from the point of view of their internationalization, that is, their transition to the category of international terms. The scientist's research is important because, firstly, it reveals the factors affecting the popularization of textile terms and, secondly, the classification of terms is carried out in the material of different systematic languages (English, Russian and Uzbek).

In our opinion, the criterion of classification of textile terms from the point of view of popularization recommended by D. Buronova serves as a model for studying the terms of all light industries. At the same time, we think that if the scope of research is expanded with the issue of the linguistic and cultural factor in the popularization of terms, it will be possible to determine the role of national culture in the mechanism of isomorphism and allomorphism in light industrial terminology.

Another noteworthy aspect of the analyzed work of D. Buronova is that the author mentions linguistic textology in his conclusion. This new term indicates that the linguistic theory of the language of the textile industry of light industry is defined by the scientist as a separate linguistic department.

O.A. Nikolayeva's dissertation on the terminology of textile merchandising focuses on the methods of creating merchandising terms, including affixation and lexical-semantic methods. The author notes that the standardization of terminology requires a careful study of the laws of word formation, the identification of the main trends of the category of

special concepts. As a basis for standardization of trade terms O.A. Nikolayeva chooses the principle of semantic accuracy of the terms and conditionally divides the studied network terminology into three groups:

1) terms with semantic accuracy: their lexical meaning is defined by denotation according to semantic symbols;

2) terms with a semantically diffuse character: their lexical meanings partially do not coincide with the denotation for various reasons;

3) semantically ambiguous language units: although there is a denotation (an object or its properties) in commodity science, there is no corresponding term, and this situation creates terminological lacunae.

The existence of lacunae in the field of terminology of light industries, in turn, in our opinion, puts before linguists the task of researching them, determining their causes, and studying the features of their expression in the landscape of the world.

O.V. In Orfinskaya's scientific article on textile terminology, the origin, meaning, and synonymy of the Russian terms *лента, тесьма* and *бинт* are explained. As a result of studying the meanings of these terms from the point of view of archeology textile terminology, the author proves that the words *лента* and *тесьма*, which are synonymous in everyday life, are clearly demarcated in the professional sphere, and *бинт* is a type of tape.

In revealing the linguistic description of the terms *лента, тесьма* and *бинт*, the scientist widely uses the method of linguistic and cultural analysis, on the basis of which the etymological and semantic features of words are studied directly in connection with the production technology of the referents they represent.

While studying the names of the nomenclature of light industrial products intended to be translated into English, S.I. Shilikov examined their orthographic, punctuational, stylistic and technical errors. According to the author, skilled translators and companies' specialists in written communication face certain difficulties in translating the names of products of light industrial enterprises. In many cases, this is determined by the lack of communication between the authors of the original text and the translators, and the mistakes made in the original text make the work of the translator even more complicated.

Due to such errors, S.I. Shilikov that contrary to the rules of Russian orthography, a letter is omitted in a word, the wrong letter is written, an abbreviation is given incorrectly; Violations of the rules of punctuation include adding extra dots in abbreviations, omitting the necessary dots, adding extra dots when a number and two abbreviations come together; methodological errors include the inconsistency between the singular and plural forms of nouns when listing products, the use of both

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

generalization and clarification methods in the description of product names, the fact that factual information is not unified, and in some cases, methodological editing is appropriate; among the technical shortcomings, there is an excess of printing marks or, on the contrary, omitting them, incorrect expression of the currency symbol, incorrect abbreviation of words, not using the same type of marker marks when listing product names, at the end of the table This includes indenting rows and in some cases terminating the table with text.

### Analysis and results

In our opinion, S.I. The errors found in the original text, listed by Shilikov, not only cause some difficulties in the translation process, but also lead to a violation of the integrity of the terms of the field in the written form.

While Z.Kh.Auxadiyeva thinks that transcription, equivalent and functional analog methods are widely used in the translation of units of measurement used in textile and light industry, ancient nonmetric units of measurement are still a number of compound words and stable expressions in the vernacular, or emphasizes that phraseologisms are preserved as a structural component. In fact, each nation has a system of measurement units created on the basis of various symbols in the language reserve,

which reflect the national identity of the languages of these nations - the national color.

However, Z.Kh. As Auxadiyeva rightly noted, the existence of each nation's own system of measurement cannot prevent a part of this system from being universal and appearing in the text as a term or reality. All such systems of units of measurement, on the one hand, serve to realize the quantitative-qualitative aspects of the objective existence with the properties of space and time, on the other hand, they were initially formed using the somatic method.

As can be seen from the analysis of the scientific works presented above, textile terminology, in general, has been researched in linguistic literature mainly in three directions:

- 1) structural-semantic description of textile terms;
- 2) sources of formation of textile terms;
- 3) translation of textile terms into other languages.

In conclusion, it can be said that the research carried out in the field of linguistic and cultural studies should be aimed at revealing the perception of culture in the linguistic shell, that is, the cultural codes are sealed in linguistic units and the world view is described.

### References:

1. Buronova, D. (1143). *Osobennosti razvitiya raznojazychnoj tekstil'noj terminologii v segodnjashnem mire*. Retrieved from <http://library.ziyonet.uz/ru/book/download/41143>
2. Hornby, A.S. (2015). *Oxford Advanced Learner's dictionary of Current English*. (p.908). Oxford University press.
3. Azrilijan, A.N. (1999). *Bol'shoj jekonomicheskij slovar`*. Moscow: Institut novoj jekonomiki. Retrieved from <http://economics.niv.ru/doc/dictionary/big-economic/fc/slovar-207-14.htm#zag-11919>
4. (2002). *Ўzbekiston millij jenciklopedijasi*. (p.421). Tashkent: Ўzbekiston millij jenciklopedijasi, T. 3.
5. Paluanova, H.D. (2016). *Ingliz, yzbek, rus va korakalpok tillarida jekologik terminlarning derivacion-semantik principiari*: Filol. fanl. dokt. .diss, (p.23). Toshkent.
6. Efimov, D.K. (2015). Kriterii razgranichenija terminologii massmedia. *Vestnik Shadrinskogo gosudarstvennogo pedagogicheskogo universiteta*, № 4 (28), p.94.
7. Solieva, M. (2013). Problematika tekstil'noj terminologii. *Uchenye zapiski Hudzhandskogo gosudarstvennogo universiteta im. akademika B. Gafurova. Gumanitarnye nauki, Huzhand*, 2013, № 4 (37), pp. 137-148.
8. Nikolaeva, O.A. (2006). *Terminologija tekstil'nogo materialovedenija*: Diss. .kand. filol. nauk, (p.179). Ivanovo.
9. (n.d.). Retrieved from <http://www.dslib.net/russkij-jazyk/terminologija-tekstilnogo-materialovedenija.html>
10. (n.d.). Retrieved from [www.ziyouz.com](http://www.ziyouz.com)

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 21.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Artur Alexandrovich Blagorodov**

Institute of Service and Entrepreneurship(branch) DSTU  
master

**Vladimir Timofeevich Prokhorov**

Institute of Service and Entrepreneurship(branch) DSTU  
Doctor of Technical Sciences, Professor,  
Shakhty, Russia

**Natalya Vasilievna Tikhonova**

Kazan National Research Technological University  
Doctor of Technical Sciences, Professor,  
Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan

**Galina Yurievna Volkova**

LLC TsPOSN «Orthomoda»  
Doctor of Economics, Professor  
Moscow, Russia

## SMALL AND MEDIUM ENTERPRISES (SMEs) - THE BASIS FOR SUCCESSFUL SOCIO-ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE ARCTIC REGIONS OF THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION WITHIN THE NORTHERN SEA ROUTE. MESSAGE 1 REPUBLIC OF KARELIA

**Abstract:** the article deals with the actual problems of the development of the tourism industry in the European North of Russia (Murmansk, Arkhangelsk regions and the Republic of Karelia) and in the high-latitude territories of the Western Arctic. Practical proposals and recommendations are given, priority tasks are formulated to solve the main socio-economic problems of using the tourist and recreational potential, developing inbound and domestic tourism for the sustainable development of regions, unique territories and tourism centers. The results can be used to improve the legislative and regulatory acts of the tourism industry, to increase its competitiveness in the North of Russia.

**Key words:** Republic of Karelia, Murmansk region, Arkhangelsk region, Arctic zones, northern sea route, efficiency, social development, priority, population, comfort, tourism, hotel business, paradigm, economic policy, financial stability.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Blagorodov, A. A., Prokhorov, V. T., Tikhonova, N. V., & Volkova, G. Yu. (2023). Small and medium enterprises (SMEs) - the basis for successful socio-economic development of the arctic regions of the Russian Federation within the Northern Sea route. Message 1 Republic of Karelia. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 142-171.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-22> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.22>  
**Scopus ASCC:** 2000.

### Introduction

UDC338.48:374.58.

Today our country needs a new socio-economic program - a model of the country's development in the current geopolitical reality. Today, the key issue

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

of the socio-economic development of Russia in the new reality is how to ensure sustainable development, which implies an increase in the level and quality of life of the population, in the conditions of changed relations with the outside world. First of all, it is necessary to identify weaknesses and present a vision of development in specific areas. One of the main goals is to determine how sovereignty will be achieved in various areas: medicine, IT, industry, etc. But economic and technological independence is not the "cornerstone" of the socio-economic program. The issue of sovereignty is important, but it is only touched upon in those areas where it makes sense to achieve it.

In the near future, answers must be found to many questions regarding future priorities, the revision of development goals for the medium and long term, as well as the choice of economic policy. Almost all areas of social and economic development are subject to revision, in particular, industrial policy, energy development issues, foreign economic policy, and environmental policy. The most difficult task is the scientific and technological development of Russia under the restrictions imposed. Sanctions barriers and prohibitions have radically changed the existing order. No country in the world can ever again be trusted to supply important products from abroad. This means that it is necessary to build technological sovereignty in a short time.

A return to the old relations with Western countries is apparently impossible, which means that there will be a restructuring of trade and logistics chains and serious changes in the financial sphere. The key task of the new strategy for the socio-economic development of Russia should be a focus on the development of competencies in mechanical engineering, metalworking, food and light industry. Obviously, it is impossible to replace the entire range of imports, but it is necessary to ensure the predominance of domestic producers in the domestic market.

Now, as part of a series of strategic sessions with key industry departments, the government is working to identify key risks, as well as to determine priority goals and objectives for the development of specific industries in the new reality, taking into account the nuances of structural adjustment. As part of the strategic sessions prepared by the departments, all the details of economic policy in various areas are analyzed. It is possible that as a result of such work, adjustments will be made to national projects, as well as various strategic planning documents. Changes may affect, among other things, various target indicators. The current situation imposes significant restrictions on the functioning and development of the economy. The challenges are diverse and large-scale, the government needs to perform its current functions, but at the same time, and promptly respond to ongoing changes that are difficult to predict in

conditions of extremely high uncertainty. From scientists and practitioners, our society today expects evidence-based approaches to solving topical issues of Russia's socio-economic development.

Tourism is one of the largest, highly profitable and most dynamic sectors of the world economy. As a modern sector of the economy, it has long gone beyond national boundaries and plays an important role in the interaction and mutual enrichment of cultures. The tourism industry, which has a multiplier effect, helps to diversify the economy, improves the quality of life of the population, and opens up opportunities for generating income and new jobs.

The European North of Russia occupies one of the most favorable positions in terms of tourism development due to the presence of natural and recreational conditions and the largest cultural heritage sites. It includes the republics of Karelia and Komi, the Arkhangelsk region with the Nenets Autonomous Okrug, the Vologda and Murmansk regions. During the Soviet period, the European North was called the Northern Economic Region. At present, along with the former Northwestern economic region, it is part of the Northwestern Federal District (NWFD).

The European North opens up broad prospects for the development of water, cruise, cultural, educational, ecological, business, event, rural, pilgrimage, sports and other types of tourism. This is a monument of world culture, the identity of various peoples and ethnographic groups (Saami, Pomors, Nenets, Komi, Karelians, Veps, Finns, Russians) is represented here, which predetermines wide opportunities for the development of ethnographic tourism.

Another name for the European North - the Russian North - is more of a historical and cultural concept than a geographical or administrative name.

In recent years, tourist flows from Russia and abroad have rushed here, which is facilitated by the unique wealth of tourist resources, the preserved traditional types of nature management, folk crafts and crafts, the special geographical position of the European North as an Arctic and coastal region. Russia has great infrastructural and natural opportunities for the tourist development of the European North, taking into account the importance of preserving the unique ecosystem of the region and the way of life of the indigenous peoples of the North. Tourism contributes to the development of territories and local communities in the Arctic and the North: it stimulates entrepreneurial activity, the creation of new jobs and social infrastructure, and promotes cultural and natural heritage. The publishing house of the Kola Scientific Center of the Russian Academy of Sciences published a monograph by E. B. Grushenko and A. M. Vasiliev "Tourism in the European North of Russia and in the Western Arctic". Work on the study of topical aspects of the current state, problems and



## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHLI (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

prospects for the development of tourism in the regions of the Western Arctic and the Russian North was continued in 2018–2025, and its first results were reflected in the proposed book.

The object of the study is the tourism industry in the regions of the Russian North and the Western Arctic. The purpose of the work is to analyze the current state, main problems and prospects for the development of tourism in the regions under consideration. Topical issues of sustainable development of the tourism industry have been studied on the basis of studying the problems of the current state and prospects for the development of tourism in the regions and centers of tourism in the Russian North and the Western Arctic. Particular attention is paid to the development of Arctic, ecological, ethnographic, cultural, educational and rural tourism. Practical proposals and recommendations for the development of inbound and domestic tourism in these regions are given.

The scientific novelty lies in the fact that new tourist destinations, trends and types of tourism are considered, as well as an overview of the current situation in the tourism sector based on modern Internet sources. The expected role of the tourism sector in the preservation of the cultural and natural heritage of the Arctic and northern territories allows us to consider tourism as an innovation formed in the environment of regional and sectoral innovation systems of the territories themselves. It was shown that in 2020–22. The development of the tourism industry has been significantly affected by the COVID-19 pandemic. Seasons 2020 - 22 in terms of international and cross-border tourism turned out to be unprofitable, and the tourism industry of the regions was forced to reorient to the domestic market.

In the Western Arctic, the focus is on the development of tourism in the high-latitude Spitsbergen archipelago and the Russian Arctic National Park. A detailed analysis of the development of the tourism sector in the Republic of Karelia has been carried out. The effective development of ecological tourism in the region is shown, equipped ecological trails in Karelia are described.

In the Russian North, the main attention is paid to the development of tourism in historical cities and rural settlements. The problems of preservation and revival of the historical and cultural heritage as a factor in the sustainable development of tourism are analyzed. The work is supplemented with photo illustrations made by E. B. Grushenko during his trips to the Russian North.

The analysis of promising tourist investment projects and routes in the regions of the European North has been carried out. Measures to stimulate the increase in competitiveness and socio-economic efficiency of the development of the tourism industry are substantiated. Strategic directions and tasks are identified, the implementation of which by

government agencies and tourist companies involved in the development of tourist and recreational resources will allow maintaining Russia's competitive advantages in the northern and Arctic regions. The developed recommendations and proposals can be used to prepare the Strategy for the Development of Arctic Tourism until 2035 and to adjust the regional tourism programs of the Russian North. The main directions for the implementation of this Strategy in individual municipalities of the Republic of Karelia are:

- modernization of the White Sea-Baltic Canal;
- development of the building materials industry on the basis of building stone deposits, including in order to ensure construction work in neighboring constituent entities of the Russian Federation;
- creation and development of mineral resource centers of the East Karelian copper-gold-molybdenum ore zone;
- formation and development of a cluster of deep wood processing enterprises;
- development of a fishery cluster, including aquaculture enterprises;
- development of cultural, historical and ecological tourism;
- creation of cascades of small hydroelectric power plants, subject to confirmation of the prospective demand for electricity and their economic efficiency;
- creation of a network of data processing and storage centers based on domestic high-speed ultra-dense solutions.

The Strategy for the Social and Economic Development of the Republic of Karelia until 2035 (hereinafter referred to as the Strategy) defines the mission, priority areas, strategic goals, main tasks and key activities for the long-term development of the region. The implementation of the Strategy is carried out by developing an action plan, and the provisions of the Strategy are detailed in regional state programs. The strategy was developed on the basis of the requirements of the Federal Law of June 28, 2014 No. 172-FZ "On Strategic Planning in the Russian Federation"; Law of the Republic of Karelia dated December 28, 2015 No. 1973-ZRK "On some issues of strategic planning in the Republic of Karelia" and taking into account the order of the Ministry of Economic Development of the Russian Federation dated March 23, 2017 No. 132 "On approval of the Methodological recommendations for the development and adjustment of the strategy of social economic development of a constituent entity of the Russian Federation and an action plan for its implementation". The strategy takes into account the provisions of the Concept of long-term socio-economic development of the Russian Federation for

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

the period up to 2020, approved by the order of the Government of the Russian Federation dated November 17, 2008 No. 1662-р,

The mission of the Strategy is to increase the genuine well-being of citizens in the Republic of Karelia, create opportunities for self-realization of residents by outstripping the growth in the number of new jobs compared to other regions of the Russian Federation, improve the level and quality of life, and provide access to social and cultural benefits.

The implementation of the Strategy will make it possible to make a consistent transition from the old industrial development model based on the exploitation of natural resources to a model of long-term sustainable self-development based on the concentration of value added in the region, maximizing the use of existing economic potential, increasing environmental sustainability and realizing human potential.

The strategy takes into account the best world experience in the development of self-sustaining development strategies that do not threaten the existence of future generations and the possibilities of their self-realization.

The development of regional development priorities is based on the findings of statistical studies and on the results of in-depth interviews with experts and residents.

The Strategy defines the priorities for the development of municipalities in the Republic of Karelia. For the purposes of implementing the Strategy, a forecast of labor resources has been prepared (Appendix 3 to the Strategy). Annex 4 to the Strategy contains the key investment and social projects planned for implementation in accordance with the main directions of development of the Republic of Karelia. Appendix 5 to the Strategy lists national and federal projects in which the Republic of Karelia may be involved. From the point of view of tourism development in the Russian Federation, one of the most advantageous positions is occupied by the European North of Russia. There are 22 historical cities, ten national natural parks, seven resorts, six world-class architectural and historical museum-reserves, the largest (Kirillo-Belozersky) and the most ancient (Valaam) monasteries in Russia, about 19 thousand objects of cultural heritage on the territory of the region. Four sites of the European North are included in the UNESCO World Cultural and Natural Heritage List - Ferapontovo, the Solovetsky Archipelago, the Kizhi Museum-Reserve and the virgin forests of the Komi Republic (Pechora-Ilychsky Reserve and the Yugyd-Va National Park). The Valaam archipelago, Karelian petroglyphs (Onega and White Sea), Kenozero National Park are included in the preliminary UNESCO World Heritage List. The Russian North is the north of Russia, its European part. This concept is rather vague, not having a precise definition.

The formation of the European North as an integral region was primarily influenced by geographical location. It is characterized by several important features that affect both its nature, and the characteristics of the settlement, and the development of the economy:

*northern position.* Although the district is located in the European part of the country, most of its territory, with the exception of the Vologda Oblast, belongs to the zone of the Far North.

*seaside position.* In contrast to many regions of Russia, the European North extends on a wide front to the vast waters of the Barents and White Seas. This largely determines the benefits of the economic and geographical position of the region. Large ports - Murmansk and Arkhangelsk, which arose on the coasts of the northern seas, play an important role in the transport system of Russia and in its foreign trade. Access to the seas also affects the geopolitical position of the region. The most accessible regions of the European North in terms of transport are the Republic of Karelia and the Vologda Oblast (a night train ride from Moscow and St. Petersburg). Arkhangelsk and Murmansk regions can be reached by train in 1–1.5 days or in 1.5–2 hours by plane from the two capitals. The most remote region is the Nenets Autonomous Okrug (the most non-tourist region of Russia), which can only be reached by plane. The most expensive region in terms of providing tourist services is the Murmansk region. For example, the cost of a one-day excursion by minibus from Murmansk around the region can reach up to 3-5 thousand rubles per person, which is on average 2-3 times more expensive than the cost of a similar excursion from Petrozavodsk or Arkhangelsk.

The Russian North is a miraculously surviving island of historical Russia, because the North escaped the Tatar-Mongol invasion. The Russian North for many centuries has preserved ancient customs, the traditional system of rural settlements and forms of nature management, the appearance of ancient Russian villages and cities, and historical folk crafts. Most of the surviving monuments of stone and wooden architecture date back to the 17th–19th centuries.

Friendly, hospitable and hospitable local population, peace of mind, lack of crowds and constant metropolitan rush make the European North even more attractive for tourists. The unique natural heritage is represented by a variety of natural landscapes - from mountain ranges to endless tundra, virgin forests, emerald lakes, waterfalls, rivers rich in fish of valuable species. In the Russian North, there are the largest lakes in Europe - Ladoga and Onega, which have become centers of especially popular cruise tourism.

The European North occupies an exceptional place in the historical and cultural development of Russia due to the pronounced manifestation here of

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

primordially Russian traditions, customs, the presence of wooden religious architecture, the traditional living culture of the Pomors, as well as the specificity of the modern way of life of the local population. A harmonious combination of natural and anthropogenic principles has led to the formation of a unique type of specially protected areas - cultural landscapes.

Due to the fact that national parks occupy an important place in the system of protected areas due to their natural and historical and cultural value, they have become one of the main organizational forms for the protection of cultural landscapes - natural and cultural territorial complexes formed as a result of the evolutionary impact of nature and man, his sociocultural and economic activities. and consisting of characteristic stable combinations of natural and cultural components that are in close interconnection and interdependence. The national parks of the Russian North have become one of the main organizational forms for the protection of cultural landscapes, while they have a colossal historical, cultural and eco-tourism potential. In recent years, there has been a tendency for tourism activities to move into the cultural space of national parks (Kenezersky, "Russian North"), to cultural landscapes. The development of tourism in the northern regions is hampered by: the seasonality factor; large spaces that do not allow for dynamic and rich tourism products; harsh climate; monotony of tourist products; lack of long-term planning in tourism and systematic work to create an attractive image of the Russian North.

The key problems of northern tourism are also the lack of quality accommodation facilities, the low level of service, the poor condition of the road and transport infrastructure, the lack of financial resources for the creation of new display facilities and the restoration of architectural monuments.

In order to fully implement all plans for the development of tourism in the North, large-scale modernization and construction of tourist and road transport infrastructures are necessary. The lack of infrastructure facilities and their significant deterioration are the main obstacles to the development of tourism.

In the regions of the European North, a network of tourist and recreational clusters (TRCs) is being formed in order to expand and increase the competitive advantages of regional tourism products. Innovative investment projects in the field of tourism should attract tourists to the region, which will provide additional investments (in the form of public-private partnerships) in the modernization of infrastructure and the further sustainable development of unique territories.

At the present stage, tourism is actively developing in all regions of the European North, and there is an annual increase in the tourist flow. The main tourist season is summer. Only two regions of

the Russian North - the Murmansk and Vologda regions - attract tourists also in winter and early spring. New Year holidays and Chinese New Year are considered high season, when Veliky Ustyug, Kirovsk, Vologda, Teriberka, Murmansk, the Sami village "Saam Syit" receive a large number of tourists. During this period, mainly groups from China come to the Kola North.

Europe's largest network of nature reserves and architectural and ethnographic open-air museums, which is being formed in the Russian North, can be considered as the main factor for the sustainable development of tourism.

*Types of tourism and tourist routes.* The most popular tourist routes of the Russian North are water lake-river cruises along the Volga-Baltic (Cherepovets, Goritsy-Kirillov, Vytegra), Ladoga (Valaam) and Onega (Petrozavodsk, Kizhi) lakes. In the Arkhangelsk region, along the Northern Dvina from Arkhangelsk to Brin-Navolok and Severodvinsk, as early as 2019, river cruises were carried out on the oldest paddle steamer in Russia, Nikolay Gogol, built in 1911. Cruise tourism requires solving the problem of shipowners with a river register and lack of regions of the Russian North, ships of the river-sea class. Due to pollution and shallowing of large navigable rivers (Sukhona, Northern Dvina, Vychegda, Mezen), cruise and passenger traffic (except for ferries) has been almost completely stopped. In addition to water cruises, the following types of tourism are actively developing in the Russian North: cultural, educational, skiing, ecological, ethnographic, rural, event, business, recreational fishing, sports, religious and pilgrimage. The most promising inter-regional tourist routes in the region are: the Silver Necklace of Russia megaproject (which unites all regions of the Northwestern Federal District), the projects Hanseatic Roads of Russia, Lomonosov's Road, Patterns of Russian Cities. Innovative types of tourism in the European North are Arctic sea cruises, hunting for the northern lights, watching marine animals, traveling to filming locations, gastronomic, industrial, border, geological and mineralogical, socially responsible tourism. Outdoor tourism is also promising - outdoor recreation and leisure, entertainment and sports at the same time.

"Silver Necklace of Russia":

Kaliningrad - Pskov - Veliky Novgorod - Vologda - Syktyvkar - Naryan-Mar - Arkhangelsk - Murmansk - Petrozavodsk - Leningrad region (Lodeynoye Pole, Novaya Ladoga, Staraya Ladoga, Shlisselburg) - St. Petersburg.

1. "The Great Way in the Russian North":

Vologda - Veliky Ustyug - Syktyvkar - Inta - Vorkuta - Pym-VaShor - Arkhangelsk - Murmansk - Zaonezhye - Pudozh - Medvezhyegorsk - Shunga - Tolvuya (the birthplace of Zosima Solovetsky) - Great Guba - about. Kizhi - Povenets - Chelmuzy (Epiphany Church, place of exile of the nun Martha,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Princess Romanova, mother of the future Tsar Mikhail) - Pyalma - Vytegra - Vologda.

"Peter's cities":

St. Petersburg - Shlisselburg - Novaya Ladoga - Lodeynoye Pole - St. Petersburg - Petrozavodsk - Arkhangelsk - Vologda - Totma.

"Journey to Ancient Rus":

Veliky Novgorod - Izborsk - Staraya Ladoga - St. Petersburg - Olonets - Belozersk - Kirillov - Veliky Ustyug - Syktyvkar - Pustozersk.

"In the footsteps of the Varangians":

Republic of Karelia - Priozersk - Vyborg - St. Petersburg - Staraya Ladoga - Veliky Novgorod - Tikhvin - Kirillov - Belozersk.

"Outposts of Russia":

Kaliningrad - St. Petersburg - Vyborg - Priozersk - Shlisselburg - Staraya Ladoga - St. Petersburg - Olonets - Border Kondushi - Kolatselga - Kinerma - Kem - Murmansk - Arkhangelsk - Vologda - Pskov - Veliky Novgorod - Murmansk - Arkhangelsk - Pustozersk; Izborsk - Pskov - Ivangorod - Koporye - St. Petersburg - Vyborg - Priozersk - Republic of Karelia (along the border of the Russian Federation).

"To Holy Places":

St. Petersburg - Pskov - Veliky Novgorod - Tikhvin - Vologda - Republic of Karelia (Murom Monastery, St. Ilyinskaya Volozero Hermitage) - Arkhangelsk Region (Solovki Islands); St. Petersburg - Novaya Ladoga - Staraya Ladoga - Tikhvin - Belozersk - Kirillov - Vologda - Totma - Veliky Ustyug.

"Living water of the North-West of Russia":

Moscow - Cherepovets - Goritsy - Vytegra - Mandrogi - Lodeynoye Pole - Staraya Ladoga - Pskov - Veliky Novgorod - Moscow - St. Petersburg - Lodeynoye Pole - Mandrogi - Petrozavodsk - Kizhi - Kem - Solovetsky Islands; Arkhangelsk - Onega - Sumposad - Virma - Belomorsk - Kem - Gridino - Umba - Varzuga (Pomor settlements of the White Sea); Yarensk - Syktyvkar - Vorkuta - Pym-Va-Shor (hot radon springs).

"Northern ports of Russia":

St. Petersburg - Belomorsk - Kem - Kandalaksha - Murmansk - Arkhangelsk - Naryan-Mar (Pechora port) - Amderma.

"Wooden architecture":

Republic of Karelia (Kizhi) - Leningrad region (Podporozhsky district) - Vologda region (Vytegra, Vologda) - Veliky Novgorod (Museum of wooden architecture "Vitoslavlitsy"); Arkhangelsk region (Museum of wooden architecture "Small Korely") - Murmansk region (Varzuga, Tersky district).

"Tree of Life" (ancient Vepsian settlements):

Republic of Karelia (Prionezhsky district, Sheltozero) - Leningrad region (Podporozhsky district, Vinnitsa, Voznesenye) - Vologda region (Babaevsky district).

"Indigenous peoples of the "Silver Necklace of Russia":

Pskov region (Sigovo village) - Republic of Karelia (Prionezhsky district, Sheltozero; Pryazhinsky district; Lakhdenpohsky district) - Leningrad region (Kingiseppsky district, Vistino village (Izhora and Vod peoples), Podporozhsky district, Vinnitsa, Voznesenye) - Murmansk region (Pomors, Tersky district; Saami, Lovozersky district) - Nenets Autonomous Okrug (Krasnoye village, Harp agricultural production cooperative).

"Ghost Towns of the North":

Korzunovo (Murmansk region) - Charonda (Vologda region) - Khalmer-Yu (Komi Republic) - Amderma (Nenets Autonomous Okrug).

For a brief description of the region on a European scale, the slogan "The Russian North is the wild nature and water expanses of Europe" can be used. This is the main factor for the development of ecological tourism - the sector of the fastest growth in tourism.

*Ecological tourism* mainly develops in the national parks "Yugyd-Va" (Komi Republic), "Paanayarvi", "Kalevalsky", "Vodlozersky" (Republic of Karelia), "Kenozersky", "Russian Arctic", "Onega Pomorye" and "Vodlozersky" (Arkhangelsk region), "Russian North" (Vologda region). The Vodlozersky National Park is located on the territory of two regions of the European North at once. Any form of regulated tourism (especially ecological and eco-cultural) is the preferred activity for most national parks. Mass flows of amateur tourists mainly prefer rafting on the rivers and reservoirs of Karelia and the Murmansk region, hiking and skiing in the Khibiny.

*Ethnographic tourism.* The European North is a real reserve of traditional folk culture of world importance. The cultures of various peoples and ethnographic groups are represented here: Saami, Pomors, Nenets, Komi, Karelians, Veps, Finns, Russians, which predetermines wide opportunities for the development of ethnographic tourism.

From the point of view of preserving the indigenous peoples and the living traditional culture of the Russian North, it is much more effective to develop small-scale low-cost cultural and natural tourism, which opens up opportunities for finding livelihoods throughout the region and does not require large investments. The initial impetus for the implementation of a new idea could be the creation of innovative cores based on ethno-cultural centers and ethno-natural parks in different parts of the European North. The integration of cultural heritage into the local zones of the ethno-cultural center makes it possible to combine the idea of preservation with the idea of reviving a unique territory in the best possible way.

The open-air museum ethno park is an object of cultural tourism that interprets the dialogues of different cultures through authentically created ethno courtyards, in which tourists can live and learn the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

technology of manufacturing folk art crafts from local craftsmen. Currently, there are four architectural and ethnographic open-air museum-reserves in the European North: the largest in Russia - "Small Korely" in the Arkhangelsk region, "Kizhi" in Karelia, "Semenkovo" in the Vologda region, Finno-Ugric ethnopark in the Komi Republic (Yb village).

On the Kola Peninsula, the main centers of ethnographic tourism are the village of Lovozero (the place of compact residence of the Saami and Komi-Izhma), the Saami village "Saam Syit", the village of Umba, the museum Pomor tonya Tetrino, the village of Loparskoye.

Tourists are also attracted by the preserved culture of the Old Believers in the historical settlements of Kimzha (Arkhangelsk region) and Ust-Tsilma (ancestral homes and the site of the Ust-Tsilemskaya Gorka folklore festival) in the Komi Republic. Of interest are also Olonets (the most ethnically Karelian city in Karelia), the village of Kalevala (the birthplace of the Kalevala epic) and the national village of Izhma (the place of compact residence of Komi-Izhma residents in the Komi Republic).

Rural tourism is actively developing in the villages of Karelia, Vologda and Arkhangelsk regions. Promising in the European North and industrial tourism (Cherepovets, Kirovsk). Orthodox pilgrimage tours are focused mainly on Valaam, the Solovetsky archipelago, the Kirillovsky district, Vologda, the Antonievo-Siysky monastery, and the Orthodox monasteries of the Komi Republic. Health resort tourism has spread in the republics of Karelia (Marcial Waters), Komi (Seregovo resort), Arkhangelsk region (Belomorie, Krasnoborsk, Solvychevodsk resorts), Vologda region (Ledengsky resort, Totma).

*Maritime Arctic tourism* is actively developing in the Murmansk and Arkhangelsk regions. Recreational fishing has spread mainly on the salmon rivers of the Kola Peninsula. Ski tourism is popular in the Murmansk region (Kirovsk, Monchegorsk, Murmansk and Polyarnye Zori). Business business

tourism has been developed in large cities with a developed hotel infrastructure (Murmansk, Petrozavodsk, Arkhangelsk, Vologda, Cherepovets and Syktyvkar).

Gastronomic tourism is gaining great popularity among tourists. All regions of the European North are included in the federal project "Gastronomic Map of Russia" in order to promote local culinary brands and traditions. Tourists can try such dishes of traditional northern cuisine as Pomeranian shangi, Karelian kalitki, fishmongers, salmon fish soup, pies with berries, venison, and cod. For example, in the Murmansk region, the umbrella brand "Made in the Arctic" has been formed to support producers of arctic cuisine. The Kola North will be able to compete in venison dishes with other northern regions, and in seafood - with the Far East.

### Main part

The bot is designed to meet human cognitive needs. This will allow you to get to know your city (or where you have arrived) better and expand its horizons, allowing you to take an independent and exciting walk. Due to the current geopolitical situation and sanctions restrictions, the practical significance of the project is increasing. Not being able to travel abroad, tourists will undoubtedly pay attention to the cities of Russia, which are quite interesting, diverse and informative.

The project is aimed at a young audience that quickly grasps all the mechanics and easily immerses not only in the game, but also in the educational process. To a greater extent, the bot is intended for people who want to experience a non-standard excursion, as well as just for leisure.

The bot may be interesting, it was originally developed to work in large cities, such as Moscow (the starting point for the project development) and St., estates, etc.). In particular, it can be used in the city of Khimki.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



**Figure 1. Instructions for the activity of the bot**

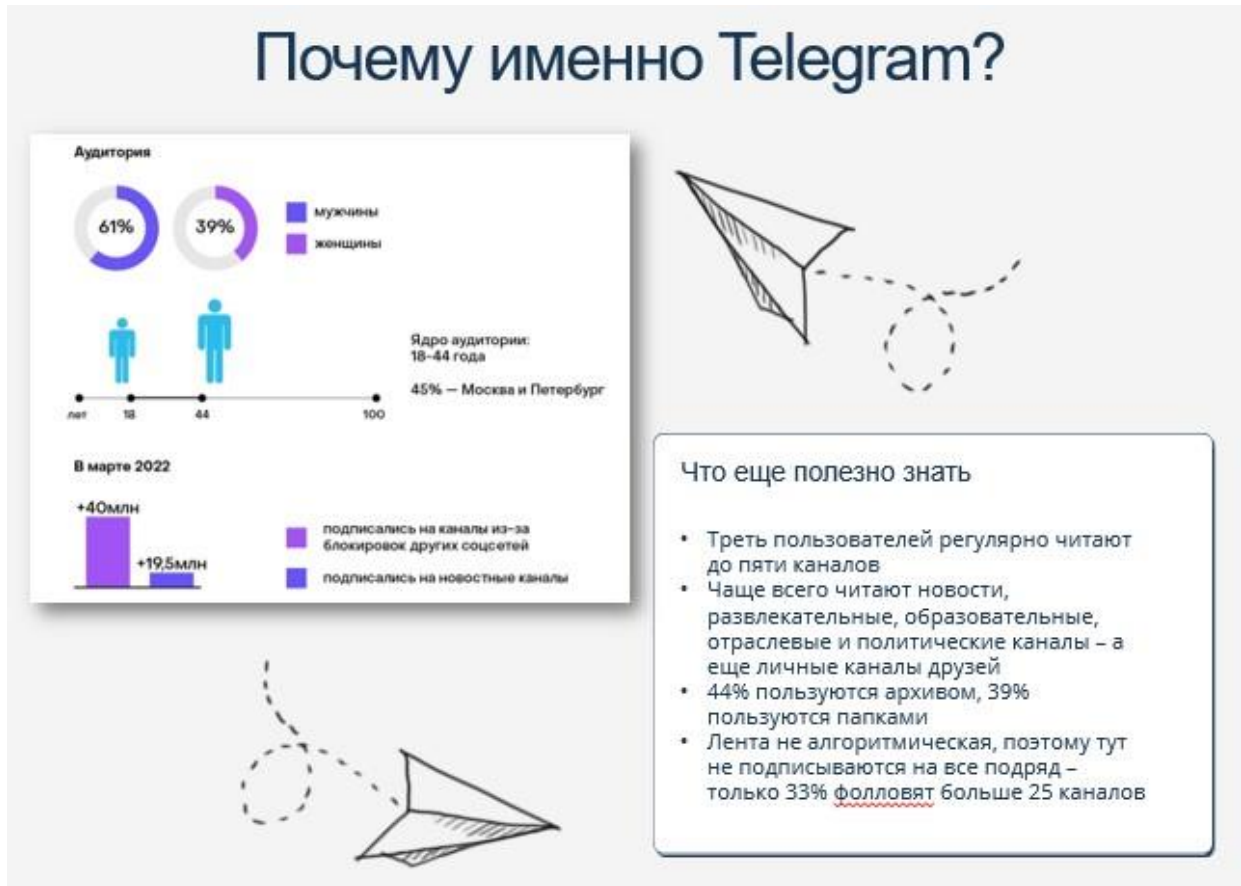
This project will be especially relevant in the current world conditions, in the face of a tough sanctions policy, many family and familiar destinations remain closed to our tourists, and people are starting to explore domestic destinations. The bot is designed to help them with this, allowing tourists to discover new spaces for their horizons.

The excursion bot is a promising direction that will cost quite a bit of money and effort, but will pay off in a fairly short time, realizing answers to the challenges of our time.

Interactive games using a Telegram bot are an excellent component for rethinking standard excursions, one of the easiest ways to introduce innovations (Fig. 2).

Also, thanks to him, you can see the sights on your own, while crowds of tourists do not interfere with you, which is important in our time, when the epidemiological situation is periodically aggravated. There is no seasonality here, since the person himself chooses when to use it.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>SISRA (India)</b> = 6.317	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 1.582	<b>ПИИЦ (Russia)</b> = 3.939	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
	<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.771	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
	<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 7.184	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350



**Figure 2. Reasons for choosing the Telegram messenger**

The guys identified potential partners for cooperation and advertising. They are shown in fig. 3.

Today, there is a distinct lack of proper digital hospitality education and the latest technological innovations, trends and best practices. That is why the general task of the teacher is the use of digital technologies and ICT in the educational process. The main task is to prepare and create the next generation of

specialists, the so-called digital technologists, who understand digital technologies in the hospitality industry, such as business applications, artificial intelligence, robotics, project management, business process automation, are able to assess the technological needs of an organization, develop its technology strategy and the optimal technology stack required by the hotel, evaluation and selection of the most appropriate technology.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

## Потенциальные партнеры для сотрудничества и рекламы

- **KudaGo и 2Do2Go**
- + Интернет-сайты, имеющие большое количество пользователей (136к)
- **Различные информационные сайты о театрах, музеях, новостные интернет-каналы о городах**
- + Недорогая реклама, сотрудничество по бартеру
- **Частные организации и заведения**
- + Новые частные музей, выставки, экспозиции
- интересные кафе или закусочные являются перспективой для сотрудничества по бартеру



Figure 3. Partner offers

To ensure the effectiveness of practical classes, information and communication technologies (ICT) are objectively in demand. Among educational ICT business trainings are in the lead. In turn, in business trainings, the professional qualities of students are provided by business games on simulators of training objects. At the Department of Mathematics and Informatics of the RMAT, from 2013 to the present,

a virtual model of a motel has been used as a stimulator to train hospitality specialists. The model is used to demonstrate industrial relations in hotel management based on the performance of official duties by Reception administrators, sales managers, legal advisers, logisticians and accountants (Figure 4).

Корпоративная Информационная Система Ассоциации Мотелей (КИС АМ) Родигин-Трам-Мотель-РФ

Дирекция    Резершн    Отдел продаж    Отдел логистики    Отдел гл. инженера    Отдел кадров    Бухгалтерия    Юрисконсульт

Головной офис    29.03.2021 10:49

[Подробнее о Резершн](#)

Здравствуйте! Вы уже работали?

- дежурным администратором    Да    Сегодня    Нет

- менеджером по продажам    Да    Сегодня    Нет

- юрисконсульт    Да    Сегодня    Нет

- логистом    Да    Сегодня    Нет

- Зам. Главного бухгалтера    Да    Сегодня    Нет

Сегодня в Сети

Дежурный	Мах-Время	Должность
Яковлева Полина Игоревна	2021-03-29 10:47	Бухгалтер
Коровкин Алексей Владимирович	2021-03-29 10:45	Бухгалтер
Голубев Константин Алахович	2021-03-29 10:43	Бухгалтер
Рошка Сергей Андреевич	2021-03-29 10:23	Бухгалтер
Бойко Розалина Впальмировна	2021-03-29 10:16	Бухгалтер
Пармоменко Валерия Алексеевна	2021-03-29 10:12	Бухгалтер
Галжизаде Алина Эльсевар кзы	2021-03-29 10:10	Бухгалтер
Штырлова Мария Александровна	2021-03-29 09:55	Бухгалтер
Василенко Анастасия Алексеевна	2021-03-29 09:53	Бухгалтер

Figure 4. Main page of the RMAT virtual motel

The ideology of the business game is based on the performance of job duties in various production situations, formalized in the information system and offered for “resolving” in the form of case tasks and online tests. The results are evaluated in points and

recorded automatically; as a completion of the business game, it is proposed to draw up a qualifying summary of the participant, including the knowledge and skills of the specialist's job duties.



## Impact Factor:

**SIRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHII (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

It should be noted that the business game is fundamentally different from the study of professional applications, such as the aforementioned Shelter software, or 1C83. Applications are intended solely for automating the work of users, that is, they are a tool for increasing individual productivity. A business game is the interaction of different, both real and virtual, users on an object simulator. Moreover, this interaction can both speed up and slow down the process of controlling the stimulator. But at the end of the training, the result is always an increase in the efficiency of performing the entire range of job duties regulated by the job description. So, the process of training hospitality specialists according to the scheme:

“Instruction -> Priority of duties by time taken -> Theory > Practical lesson” seems to be justified and proven by the long-term practice of using RMAT and a number of other educational institutions in the educational process. It is worth noting that a modern graduate must have the skill of working in the most popular CRM system in Russia, Bitrix 24. To increase the competitiveness of a graduate of a tourism university, he must have a number of minimum necessary skills in Bitrix 24, namely:

1. The skill of processing outgoing calls in a CRM system, the ability to work with leads: working with calls by ip-telephony, with calls by e-mail, calls in a chat, knowing and applying the ethical standards of business communication adopted in this industry when communicating with clients.

2. Ability to work with deals (and/or leads) at various stages and apply these stages to more successfully convert a lead into a sale.

3. The ability to set up audiences for advertising, online advertising itself in popular CRM-related services, and automatic funnels based on this advertising.

4. E-mail marketing skills for various customer groups based on CRM data are also still relevant.

5. For senior positions, it is necessary to learn the basic principles of setting up a CRM system: setting up a sales funnel, deal stages, deal and lead card fields, setting up payment options (automatically issued invoices, various online payment methods, payments in chat, etc.), setting up robots in leads from transactions.

Today, not a single university or college teaches its students the basics of using and setting up CRM systems. However, there is an obvious demand from business for personnel who already have the necessary skills. It can be concluded that the introduction of training in the basics of the Bitrix 24 CRM system in the course of education and training will increase the competitiveness of graduates after graduation from a university or college.

Thus, at present, despite some shortcomings in the process of informatization of educational

activities, the highly promising educational environment of our time must meet the central challenges of the century by implementing a new educational concept that becomes the basis of a progressive educational environment and implements such areas as the fundamentalization of education in all its levels; generalization of innovative and evolving teaching methods based on the use of advanced IT; formation of a system of continuous and open education as a universal form of activity aimed at the continuous development of the individual throughout life and the creation of a system of advanced education.

The integration of information telecommunication technologies into the hotel industry is necessary for the development of the hotel business, minimizing costs, generating revenue and reaching customers. They can be seen as a strategic asset on which the hospitality ecosystem develops.

Over the past decades, information technology (IT) has played an important role in the development of the hospitality and tourism industry, they have helped to replace expensive human labor with advanced technologies and technical solutions. The introduction of integrated information technologies in the process of providing hotel business services helps to reduce labor costs and makes it possible to avoid problems with customer service.

Technology has led to the ability of hotels to reduce costs, increase efficiency, and improve customer experience. Both tourists and hospitality enterprises can derive mutually beneficial innovation from continuous improvements in information technology development, booking and guest service. Since the hotel business is closely linked to the tourism industry, booking and itinerary development is an untapped potential for the development of the hospitality industry market in Russia.

AI-based ICT tools and software provide insight into traveler intent in the form of travel requests, purchase information, search history, location and more. Thus, these ICT tools help hotels to receive tourist information about the traveler from anywhere at any time, which increases the efficiency of using information and communication technology data in the process of providing hotel services, the possibility of building long-term partnerships with customers in the implementation of interaction marketing. It is necessary to reveal the systemic and methodological aspects of the use of IT in the hotel industry. This systematic approach is shown in Figure 5.

An important incentive for the introduction of information technology in the hotel and restaurant business is cost reduction, which lies in the fact that high-speed software applications in the field of information and telecommunication technologies have become an integral part of the hospitality industry for the development of this business. Efficient ICT applications facilitate various

## Impact Factor:

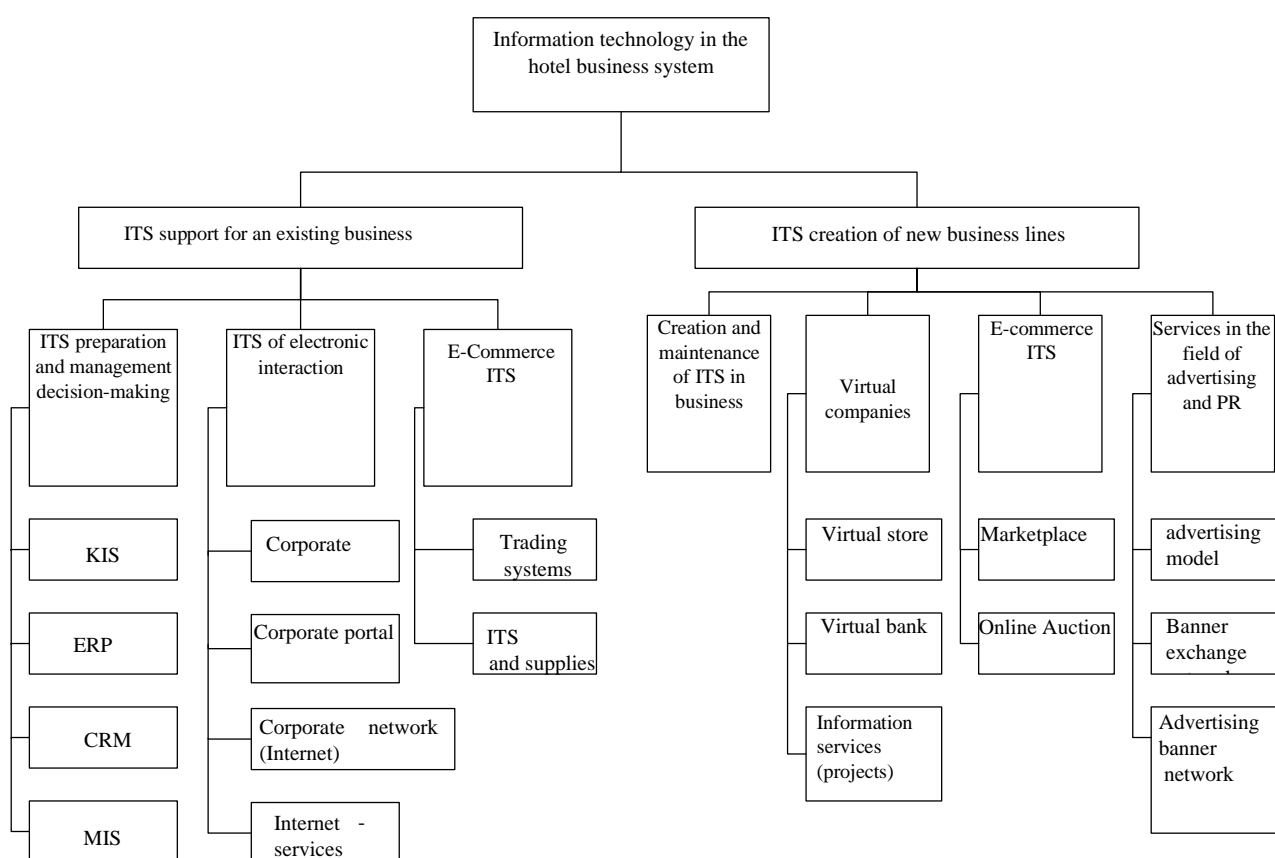
<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>6.317</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ</b> (Russia) = <b>3.939</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.771</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>7.184</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

operations such as customer-management relationships, supply chain management, and so on. This means that tasks such as hotel selection and booking, ordering, purchasing, payment tracking, reporting, etc. are now performed by ICT. Thus, it helps the hotel business to work efficiently with a limited number of staff. Hotels now connect directly with guests, offering personalized experiences and hospitality.

It should be noted that in the wake of the Covid-19 pandemic, changing guest behavior has created a demand for contactless technology innovation. For example, contactless check-in/check-out, automatic on/off lights, air conditioners, fans, voice search

commands, automatic blinds and window coverings, and equipment that may be in the hospitality industry.

\* ITS - information technologies and systems; PR - public relations; CIS - corporate information systems; ERP systems (Enterprise Resource Planning - hotel business resource planning) allow you to combine the main elements of production and commercial activities (production, planning, finance and accounting, logistics, sales, inventory management, order management for the manufacture and supply of products, provision of services), CRM is a customer relationship management system aimed at maintaining a given level of sales of services. MIS - marketing information systems.



**Figure 5. Use of IT in the hotel business system**

In addition, the use of a digital menu card when ordering, hassle-free QR code scanning and robotic staff contribute to a contactless and safe interaction with visitors. The use of chatbots in the communication process, that is, special programs for communication, also significantly increases the effectiveness of communication with the company's customers. Structural cabling, telephony, television (including cable), electronic racing lock control system, Wi-Fi and Internet connection, hotel accounting software, restaurant and spa management systems, ERP systems (warehouse calculation, accounting and financial systems and etc.) in the hotel

business must also be considered as information technology and its use. Much attention in the development of information technologies in the field of hospitality is given to the online booking system. Thanks to hotel sites, a client anywhere in the world can find a suitable hotel according to individual parameters: location, comfort level, cost, availability of additional services.

There are different types of online hotel reservations. General hotel selection networks, where the user can only know specific hotels that are not associated with specific networks, but work with all hotels with which he has an agreement (receives a

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

percentage of sales). For example, booking.com, hotels.com, oktogo.ru, hotel.tutu.ru, ostrovok.ru, 101hotels.com/russia, hotels.ru, travel.yandex.ru/hotels, etc.

We can single out the following areas that are promising for the use and development of the hospitality industry.

Internet and marketing. The Internet has a strong influence on the hotel business and tourism.

Computer systems. Computer systems facilitate communication between larger hotel chains located in multiple locations. They also help inform staff and facilitate access to information, which greatly improves the comfort of guests when choosing services and offers.

Mobile connection. Mobile tablets and smartphones continue to replace desktop computers. Communication with hotel guests through them allows you to notify customers about changes and delays in bookings, provide additional services through the GPS system and track the movements of guests.

- work in numerous languages of the world,
- search for hotels and inns around the world, self-booking,
- it is easy to compare prices for other hotels in the city,
- all data is taken directly from the hotel database,  
Accor
  - advice on booking by phone, free loyalty program.
  - when requesting hotels in the city, a complete list of hotels in the city where you can book rooms is issued,
  - the largest selection of hotels,
  - for each hotel there are several different rates and room categories,
  - it is possible to search for a hotel by a large list of additional Amadeus services,
  - payment directly to the hotel, the possibility of visa support from the hotel.
  - when requesting hotels in the city, a complete list is issued, it is possible to compare prices,
  - you can see on the city map where all the presented hotels are located and choose the most convenient one,
  - it is possible to sort hotels alphabetically, by price, by stars,  
Tourico
    - by location in the city,  
GTA
      - it is possible to book several hotels in the city at once,  
MGHotels

• It is not necessary to pay the hotel at the time of booking.

Consider the main highly competitive strategies in the field of information technology, which can significantly improve the quality of the services offered in the hospitality industry, namely:

1. PMS (Property Management System). The introduction of PMS (Property Management System) into the work can greatly improve the quality of customer service and form a positive image of the hotel in their eyes. PMS (Property Management System) is a hotel management software that allows you to streamline your business tasks by making your operations more flexible. The main advantages of installing PMS in a hotel:

- Sales Channel Integration: Provides the ability to instantly retrieve booking information from all online and offline channels to prevent disruptions and ensure operational flexibility. in addition, to enable hotel managers to provide their guests with quality accommodation services;
- business automation - prevents failures and speeds up processes;
- Guarantee of an easy-to-use interface: it allows you to find and organize information in an understandable way;
- monitoring through strategic reports: helps the manager to apply more effective strategies, increasing the visibility of the hotel in the market;
- the opportunity to offer the hotel an innovative way to interact with the guest: provides flexibility and efficiency in the provision of an expanded range of services offered.

2. Channel Manager. To simplify the task of booking, using the Channel Manager is a great option. Channel Manager is a hotel manager that will help you manage your hotel processes and increase sales.

3. Booking system. This is because the booking system allows customers to make reservations directly on the hotel website or social media, bypassing intermediaries. Consequently, sales will be more profitable, as commissions will not be charged. In addition to avoiding the possibility of manual errors or duplicate reservations, as the engine undergoes an integrated real-time update with other tools.

4. Business intelligence (BI). Due to the high competition and demand in the hospitality sector, BI is a smart way to manage your business effectively. The process goes through the following stages, which requires constant collection, organization, analysis of data and reports, control and updating of data, which will help the hotel manager make decisions and track the results of the hotel business. In this way, it will be possible to collect data on the Internet and evaluate the impact of your hotel's marketing strategies in comparison with competitors.

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

5. Hotel management software. This technology is a desktop or web-based tool designed to assist managers in the tourism and hospitality industry with a variety of procedures, from sales and booking processes to managing hospitality tasks. It offers cloud storage and other important features for efficient hotel management.

6. Hotel rooms in high-tech style. These rooms offer convenience and comfort with the use of devices with great technological application to meet the needs of the hotel's clients. These services go far beyond Wi-Fi accessibility: they allow you to perform actions such as turning the TV and air conditioner on and off, registering, opening and closing the bedroom door, for example, using only a smartphone, tablet or some other device.

7. CRM system. It helps to understand the needs of your guests through technology solutions that collect information and promote hospitality services. It must be understood that customer satisfaction is related to managing the behavior of consumers of hotel services and the process of interacting with them before, during and after the stay. Therefore, it is necessary to pay attention to the development of CRM - systems in the implementation of the interaction marketing strategy.

8. Digital Marketing. Given today's scenario, investing in digital marketing strategies will help the hospitality industry attract more guests, build relationships, and create a positive customer experience for the brand. Some of the main digital marketing strategies for the hospitality industry include: creating a website and/or blog for your hotel, using Google services, email marketing, and managing hotel information on social networks.

9. GPS beacons. A beacon geolocation device that can determine where guests are in a hotel. Therefore, when a guest is in a location such as a spa, gym, restaurant, and bar, they can receive notifications about promotions and other activities specific to these places. Thus, this allows the hotel to improve the work with its customers through the Bluetooth system.

10. Early check-in and check-out. The guest may receive a link via email or message where they will fill in all their details in advance and take the opportunity to confirm the booking. This greatly speeds up the process of filling out the necessary documents for accommodation in a hotel and issuing keys to him. Upon check-out, the guest receives an invoice and payment rules by following the same steps.

These technologies in the hospitality industry make it easier to accommodate guests at the time of their arrival, improving the service at the front desk.

11. Whatsapp. Direct booking is facilitated by the use of the WhatsApp system. This is due to the fact that the application is free and the most used social networks in the world. The main advantages of

this communication channel for the hotel are: optimization of your team's time, efficiency in service and widespread use of direct bookings.

12. Chatbot. This is a messaging software that works and manages the chat as if it were a direct communication with the hotel manager.

This technology allows the hotel to be available even after hours to answer customer questions at any time of the day or night when guests tend to socialize more outside of business hours.

Thus, investment in these technological innovations in the hospitality industry is essential to provide a differentiated and more dynamic experience to its guests. The use of technology in the hospitality and tourism industry has helped speed things up and make travel more enjoyable and efficient. Technology helps not only large chain hotels, but can also be useful for the interaction between business systems and other small companies in the industry. Travelers are now interested in self-guided itinerary using electronic media, platforms, high-tech products and ICT equipment. The integration of modern platforms and programs in the hotel industry system allows you to increase the influx of tourists and the profit of the hotel, hotel and restaurants, this will require technological, information, communication modernization of their work.

Features of the economic and geographical position. The Republic of Karelia is located in the northwest of the Russian Federation and is part of the Northwestern Federal District. Karelia borders in the south with the Leningrad and Vologda regions, in the east with the Arkhangelsk region, in the north with the Murmansk region, and in the west the border of the republic coincides with the state border of the Russian Federation and the Republic of Finland (part of the European Union).

In the northeast, the region is washed by the White Sea, which potentially creates opportunities for direct access to the World Ocean with the appropriate development of port infrastructure. The White Sea-Baltic Canal, passing through the territory of the region, connects the Baltic and White Seas. The presence of access through the White and Baltic Seas to the basin of the Arctic and Atlantic oceans, to the Northern Sea Route is a potential tool for the development of shipping, fish processing, and can also be used for tourism purposes, in particular, through the city of Kem passes the shortest route to the Solovetsky islands.

The main feature of the economic and geographical position of the Republic of Karelia is the common extended border with the Republic of Finland (European Union) with a fairly developed border infrastructure. The proximity of a highly developed country creates conditions for strengthening international relations. In addition, the region is distinguished by its relative proximity to the

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

constituent entities of the Russian Federation with a high potential for the consumer market - St. Petersburg, the Leningrad Region, as well as to the regions of Central Russia. The republic has an advantageous transit position between large industrial centers and ports located on the territory of the Murmansk, Vologda and Leningrad regions, which is strengthened by the presence of main railway, road and inland water transport facilities.

The favorable economic and geographical position of the Republic of Karelia contributes to the development of interregional and international trade, attracting tourists, technology transfer, and so on.

agro-climatic conditions. The climate of Karelia is transitional from maritime to temperate continental, relatively mild with an abundance of precipitation and predominantly cyclonic weather. The main part of the republic is located in the Atlantic-Arctic zone of the temperate zone. Agro-climatic resources in the southern part allow growing a number of agricultural crops typical for the non-chernozem zone. But the opportunities for crop production in the open field are limited - the region is classified as a zone of risky farming. Dairy and meat animal husbandry is promising.

The watershed between the basins of the Arctic and Atlantic Oceans passes through Karelia: most of the territory belongs to the catchment area of the White Sea of the Arctic Ocean, the smaller part belongs to the catchment area of the Baltic Sea of the Atlantic Ocean (about 60% and 40% of the territory, respectively). The river network of Karelia is represented by about 28 thousand rivers with a total length of about 83 thousand km (the density of the river network is 0.46 km per sq. km), about 20% of the region's territory is lakes and artificial reservoirs. About 17 thousand square meters. km falls on parts of the water areas of Ladoga (most of the water area) and Lake Onega (about 80% of the water area) located within the Republic of Karelia. Marshes and wetlands occupy 35.4 thousand square meters. km, or 19.63% of the territory of the Republic of Karelia. Water bodies have significant potential for sports tourism,

The combination of a variety of natural landscapes, a large number of water bodies and a generally favorable environmental situation determine the high tourist and recreational attractiveness of the region not only for residents of Russia, but also for foreign tourists.

The mineral resources of Karelia are represented by more than 50 types of minerals. More than 1000 deposits are included in the state balance of mineral reserves. In Karelia, the reserves of non-ferrous and rare metals suitable for industrial use are taken into account. Non-metallic raw materials are represented by deposits of muscovite, pegmatite, quartzite, kyanite, building and ornamental stone, shungite, as well as sands and clays. The Republic of Karelia also has significant reserves of peat, which can be

considered a reserve energy carrier capable of covering a significant part of the energy needs of the region.

Promising minerals that will be in demand in the near future are iron, chromite, iron-vanadium-titanium, uranium-vanadium, copper-nickel and molybdenum ores, precious metals, platinum group metals, graphite, diamonds, as well as pegmatite, feldspar raw materials for the porcelain, glass and faience industry, raw materials for the stone industry, stone for crushed stone and facing stone.

The northern municipalities in the Republic of Karelia (Belomorsky, Kalevsky, Kemsy and Loukhsky districts, Kostomuksha urban district) belong to the regions of the Far North, the rest - to areas equated to the regions of the Far North, which is associated not only with natural and climatic conditions, but also with transport remoteness. A number of municipalities in the republic are significantly removed from the main transport routes (Kalevsky, Muezersky districts, Kostomuksha urban district, partly Suoyarvsky and Loukhsky districts). The Belomorsky, Kemsy and Loukhsky regions became part of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation.

At the same time, since 2013, the concentration of the population in the capital has increased by 6.5 percentage points. The high concentration is due, among other things, to higher wages in Petrozavodsk - it is about 20 - 30% higher than the average for the region (according to Kareliastat data on large and medium-sized organizations - by 6%).

The demographic burden in the region is 783 people of non-working age per 1,000 people of working age, which is significantly higher than the national average (740 people in 2019). The decline in the share of the younger generation and the growth in the number of older people in the labor force worsens the structure of the labor market.

Thus, the Republic of Karelia is distinguished by its unique geographical position and rich natural and cultural potential for the development of industries and services, including creative industries and tourism, but, like many northern regions of Russia, it is characterized by the inaccessibility of many territories, unfavorable climatic conditions and unfavorable demographic trends, which limits, and often makes impossible, the development of the modern economy.

1. Growing tension in the social sphere, high public debt of the Republic of Karelia and slowdown in economic growth due to the deterioration of the macroeconomic environment, the development of crisis phenomena in the economy and changes in tax legislation.

2. The current structure of the gross value added and the structure of the use of the gross regional product of the Republic of Karelia does not allow

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

providing the necessary conditions for entering the trajectory of sustainable economic growth.

3. Unstable dynamics of industrial production combined with the absence of positive changes in the structure of gross value added and the structure of industry.

4. The current structure of employment of the population and the lack of highly productive workers in the sphere of material production in the Republic of Karelia causes high budget expenditures and rather low labor productivity indicators.

5. Decrease in production volumes and unstable situation in the field of agriculture, combined with high positive dynamics of development - economic complex.

6. Decrease in production volumes, unstable situation and growth of spatial heterogeneity in the forest complex of the region, combined with a high level of demand for timber (forest resources).

7. Preservation of high spatial heterogeneity of the economic complex of the Republic of Karelia, concentration of production in monospecialized settlements.

The high proportion of single-industry towns in the volume of industrial production and the total population is one of the key socio-economic features of the Republic of Karelia.

An analysis of the existing spatial, socio-economic and environmental potential, the main trends and features of the socio-economic development of the Republic of Karelia allows us to identify the following conditions and limitations for the development of the region.

The main elements that form the internal potential of the socio-economic development of the Republic of Karelia are the following:

- the presence of a significant operational reserve of natural resources (mineral, forest, biological water, land, fuel and energy, tourist and recreational), which can be additionally involved in economic turnover;

- the presence of large industrial enterprises with serious technological competencies and significance in international and Russian markets, with a high potential for expanding and increasing production volumes, creating new jobs, developing cooperation with small businesses;

- the presence of a sufficiently large number of potential investment sites such as Greenfield and Brownfield, as well as unused agricultural land that can be used to form attractive investment sites;

- economic and geographical advantages, expressed in a convenient transit location, proximity to the capacious consumer market of the St. sea way and railway way;

- historically high civil and entrepreneurial activity of the population, which can be enhanced by the development and implementation of measures aimed at encouraging and supporting public

initiatives, the development of small and medium-sized businesses;

- a relatively high level of development of the information and communication infrastructure in Petrozavodsk and the concentration of competencies for the training of specialists in this area;

- a high level of development of the scientific and educational complex (including universities, secondary vocational educational institutions, scientific organizations), which is the basis for the preparation and provision of existing and new enterprises with highly qualified personnel, as well as for the development of innovative activities;

- high national - cultural, historical and spiritual potential of the Republic of Karelia, the presence of a large number of historical and cultural monuments.

The use of the existing internal potential for the socio-economic development of the Republic of Karelia is associated with a number of restrictions that can be removed due to the development and implementation of a set of relevant measures and projects:

- growing demographic load, decrease in the number and density of the population, the outflow of young people and university graduates, increased migration outflow of the most qualified personnel abroad, to St. Petersburg and Moscow, a decrease in the quality of migration inflow to the region;

- insufficient development and unsatisfactory quality of transport infrastructure in municipal districts in the Republic of Karelia, a high level of depreciation of the main objects of transport infrastructure of republican and local significance;

- an increase in the volume of generation of production and consumption wastes with a low level of their utilization and processing, poor quality of drinking water and water treatment in a number of settlements of the Republic of Karelia;

- high tariffs for connection to networks in the presence of a shortage of energy capacities in a number of municipal districts of the Republic of Karelia, low level of gasification;

- high level of deterioration of housing and communal, road infrastructure in most urban and rural settlements of the Republic of Karelia, low availability of social infrastructure facilities in remote settlements, as well as low comfort of the urban environment;

- weak technological development and a high level of depreciation of the industrial infrastructure of a number of enterprises and industries, which necessitates their modernization;

- the presence of mono-profile municipalities with a high risk of worsening the socio-economic situation.

An analysis of the main trends and problems of the socio-economic development of the Republic of

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

Karelia, an assessment of the potential and limitations of its use made it possible to identify the following main disproportions and imbalances in development:

- territorial unevenness of development: growing disproportions in the level and dynamics of the socio-economic development of individual municipalities, the difference in the level and quality of life in urban and rural areas;

- concentration of the population and labor force: an increase in the concentration of the population and business entities in the city of Petrozavodsk, combined with the acceleration of depopulation processes in remote parts of the republic, the formation of a trend towards the formation of a mono-centric region;

- growing competition for young professionals and qualified personnel from the city of Moscow, St. Petersburg, the southern regions of Russia in terms of advantages in the quality of life, opportunities for self-realization, the comfort of the urban environment, the quality of leisure;

- imbalance between the needs of the regional labor market and the profiles of training in organizations of higher and secondary vocational education, as well as between the requirements of employers for the quality of vocational training and the capabilities of educational institutions;

- imbalance in terms of a high level of development of science and education, on the one hand, on the other hand, insufficient interaction between educational, scientific organizations and organizations in the real sector of the economy;

- maintaining a high level of public debt and restrictions on the introduction and use of tax incentives for business and entrepreneurship, if it is necessary to implement an active investment policy and search for opportunities to provide state support for investment and entrepreneurial activity;

- the high role of small business and tourism in creating new jobs and ensuring self-employment of the population with a large share of the shadow sector in these areas of activity;

- digital divide - the presence of settlements that are not provided with cellular communications and / or access to the information and telecommunications network "Internet" with a general high development of information and communication infrastructure in large cities;

- the presence of great opportunities for the development of border trade and foreign economic activity while maintaining and tightening economic and other sectoral sanctions by foreign states.

The main opportunities for removing the above-mentioned restrictions and disproportions of development include:

- ensuring the planned volumes of financing of the federal target program "Development of the Republic of Karelia for the period up to 2020" and the

implementation of the activities planned in it from the budget of the Republic of Karelia;

- expanding the participation of the Republic of Karelia in federal government programs, the federal investment program with the concentration of resources and attention on several breakthrough infrastructure, economic and social projects that can provide a serious multiplier effect for the Republic of Karelia, including in the development of single-industry towns, rural areas, development of the Arctic territories, etc.;

- active use of new instruments of state support and development of certain territories, including the creation of territories for advanced socio-economic development, industrial parks and other tools;

- rebooting industrial and innovation policy, combined with the development of new forms and instruments of state support for investment projects, the creation and improvement of the efficiency of regional development institutions;

- development of interregional and international cooperation in terms of the implementation of integrated projects of environmental and tourism orientation, including interregional projects related to the development of tourism on the Ladoga and Onega lakes, the White Sea and the Solovetsky archipelago, projects for the development and development of territories that are part of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation and others projects;

- attracting resources of cross-border and interregional cooperation at the federal, regional and local levels for the socio-economic development of the territory, using the potential of cross-border cooperation programs between Russia and the European Union, their implementation;

- implementation of major infrastructure projects, including the modernization and development of the Petrozavodsk (Besovets) airport, the modernization and construction of seaports, the modernization of transit railway and automobile federal routes to Murmansk and the Republic of Finland, the use of the potential of the Belkomur project, the development of energy infrastructure and gasification, etc. .;

- a radical improvement in the quality of the regulatory environment and an improvement in the investment climate, the removal of administrative barriers and administrative pressure on small and medium-sized businesses, the creation of favorable institutional conditions, the development of a special infrastructure to support entrepreneurship;

- overcoming the trend towards a decrease in the share of the younger generation and an increase in the share of older people in the labor force through the implementation of measures to retain qualified young personnel in the region;

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

- implementation of advanced urban planning practices and approaches to the development of the urban environment, improving the quality of the urban environment, public spaces to improve the comfort of living in order to preserve and increase human capital, reduce population migration;

- integrated development of the scientific and educational complex, aimed at the formation of high-tech entrepreneurship and the preservation of highly qualified personnel, the formation of science-intensive services in the city of Petrozavodsk in the field of health care, recreation, information technology;

- technological modernization to increase the depth of processing of raw materials and the production of finished consumer products by attracting, implementing and supporting investment projects aimed at creating the production of new types of products with high added value from local raw materials;

- the formation of industry clusters (timber industry, fisheries, tourism, scientific and educational, etc.) due to state support measures and stimulation of cooperation processes and the organization of joint ventures, which will increase the intensity of resource use, the competitiveness of products and services, and will also allow to concentrate production in the region chains and the added value they generate;

- creation of conditions for the formation of the Republic of Karelia as a center of ecological and health tourism of all-Russian significance, the preservation of biodiversity and natural landscapes, the involvement of specially protected areas and objects of regional significance in the development of the tourism sector in the republic;

- promotion and implementation of environmental programs aimed at the development of separate waste collection, plastic recycling, the introduction of "green technologies" in industry, the development of waste processing enterprises, the development of water treatment infrastructure, and improving the quality of drinking water;

- reducing the energy deficit of the territory by supporting the development of alternative and renewable energy, including small hydropower plants, the development of wind energy, bioenergy based on the use of local bioenergy resources (including wood waste), solving problems of tariff setting (last mile and cross-subsidization) to launch projects in areas of alternative energy and their development and support;

- organizing the supply of products to retail chains of large cities and agglomerations of the country focused on healthy and environmentally friendly food products, promoting products of Karelian manufacturers based on the formation of a unique trademark and the creation of a single regional distributor to ensure their sale in other regions of Russia and abroad.

The SWOT Strategies Matrix presents the main strategies that will allow you to take advantage of the strengths and opportunities open to the region in order to level the threats and eliminate the weaknesses of socio-economic development.

The Republic of Karelia, in comparison with other regions of the Russian Federation, has a relatively high human potential, a developed scientific and educational complex, and a unique economic and geographical position. At the same time, there is a tendency to reduce the population, the movement of residents from hard-to-reach regions to the capital of the republic, as well as a tendency to outflow of the most qualified personnel from the region. The loss of human capital is due to fundamental conditions and restrictions for development. In addition, it is worth noting the significant infrastructural problems of development, including the underdevelopment of transport accessibility of individual settlements and communications in them.

The strategy is being implemented in three stages.

The first stage (2021-2025) is the creation of basic conditions for the sustainable development of the Republic of Karelia. Priority is given to the development of engineering, energy, transport infrastructure, communications, i.e. in general, the creation of basic conditions for the formation of a sustainable development model. In addition, social infrastructure will be developed, conditions will be provided for improving the quality of healthcare, education, including additional education.

An important element of the regional economic policy will be the creation of the necessary conditions (legal and organizational) for increasing investment and the development of new industries and sectors of the economy, new industrial policy instruments and measures will be implemented to diversify the economy of single-industry towns, to increase the competitiveness of local producers, the volume and list of measures of state support for entrepreneurship. A special place in regional policy will be given to reducing the state debt of the republic and bringing it into line with the requirements of the Budget Code of the Russian Federation.

The results of the implementation of the first stage of the Strategy (under the forced scenario) will be:

- achievement of the GRP of the Republic of Karelia in 2021 of the value of 327 billion rubles;

- increase in investments in fixed capital up to 65 billion rubles;

- increase in life expectancy by 2 years (up to 72.5 years); reduction of emissions of pollutants into the atmosphere by 8%;

- reduction in the proportion of drinking water samples that do not meet the standards from 30 to 15%;



## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

increase in the area of protected areas up to 2.45% of the total area of the territory of Karelia; growth in the number of persons accommodated in collective accommodation facilities, up to 590 thousand people (now - 414.6 thousand people);

the growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in the GRP of the region will increase to 29.3%;

growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in employment to 31.2%;

an increase in the share of high-tech and knowledge-intensive sectors of the economy in GRP to 17.8%, an increase in exports of non-commodity non-energy goods to 673 million US dollars.

The second stage (2026 - 2030) is the formation of a new development model for the Republic of Karelia based on the principles of sustainable development, the implementation of the provisions of the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation of May 7, 2018 No. 204 "On the national goals and strategic objectives of the development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035".

At the second stage, the "decoupling" of bottlenecks in the engineering, transport, energy infrastructure, and communications system will continue. The formation of the basis of the transport framework of the republic will take place, all settlements of the region will be provided with transport communications (including public transport). In the sphere of industrial and investment policy, the measures, the implementation of which was launched at the first stage (diversification, cluster policy, "reset" of industrial policy), will be scaled up and refined. Particular attention will be paid to expanding state support for inter-industry and intra-industry cooperation between enterprises and increasing the efficiency of production clusters as tools for concentrating production chains and added value in the territory of Karelia.

In the social sphere, the implementation of the policy of introducing digital technologies will continue. The quality of social services is provided at the level of the best Russian practice, queues for kindergartens have been completely eliminated, including for children aged 0-3 years. All target values of the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation dated May 7, 2018 No. 204 "On the national goals and strategic objectives of the development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035" will be achieved, including within the framework of national projects in the areas of "demography", "health", "education", "housing and urban environment", "ecology", "safe and high-quality roads, labor productivity and employment support", "science", "digital economy", "culture", "small and medium-sized businesses and support for individual entrepreneurial initiative,

The results of the implementation of the second stage of the Strategy (under the forced scenario) will be:

achievement of the GRP of the Republic of Karelia in 2035 of the value of 400 billion rubles;

increase in investments in fixed capital up to 87 billion rubles; increase in life expectancy to 74 years;

reduction of pollutant emissions into the atmosphere by 17% compared to the level of 2017;

reduction in the proportion of drinking water samples that do not meet the standards to 3-5%;

increase in the area of protected areas up to 2.56% of the total area of the territory of Karelia;

growth in the number of persons accommodated in collective accommodation facilities, up to 847 thousand people;

growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in the region's GRP to 35.5%; growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in employment to 36.2%;

an increase in the share of high-tech and knowledge-intensive sectors of the economy in GRP up to 20%, an increase in exports of non-commodity non-energy goods to 870 million US dollars.

The third stage (2030 - 2035) is the implementation of the sustainable development model, improving the quality of life, a breakthrough in the development of human capital sectors. It is planned to scale up the best experience of social policy, introduce a human-oriented and environmentally oriented approach to economic development. Lean production technologies will be introduced in all municipal and regional institutions, including healthcare institutions. Environmentally friendly technologies will be widely used in industry. Urban districts will be developed taking into account the principles of creating a modern humanistic urban environment. Emergency repairs in housing and communal services will be replaced by planned ones, all bottlenecks in the infrastructure (transport, energy, engineering, communications) will be eliminated.

In the Republic of Karelia, modern mechanisms for managing the region will be implemented, the most advanced practices of public participation, mechanisms of direct democracy and digital technologies of smart cities will be introduced. The Republic of Karelia will receive an investment grade credit rating.

The results of the implementation of the third stage of the Strategy (under the forced scenario) will be:

achievement of the GRP of the Republic of Karelia in 2025 of the value of 500 billion rubles; increase in investments in fixed assets up to 120 billion rubles;

increase in life expectancy up to 80 years;

reduction of pollutant emissions into the atmosphere by 30% compared to the level of 2017;

## Impact Factor:

**SIRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

achievement of a 100% share of drinking water samples that meet the standards; increase in the area of protected areas up to 2.7% of the total area of the territory of Karelia; growth in the number of persons accommodated in collective accommodation facilities, up to 1,500 thousand people;

growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in the region's GRP to 37%;

growth in the share of small and medium-sized businesses in employment up to 40%;

increase in the share of high-tech and knowledge-intensive sectors of the economy in GRP up to 25%;

increase in exports of non-commodity non-energy goods up to 1100 million US dollars.

In the long-term development of the region, three main scenarios can be distinguished: conservative (inertial), targeted, forced (federal).

The implementation of the scenarios depends primarily on the general economic and political situation in Russia and abroad, the positioning of the Republic of Karelia at the federal level (the scale of initiation of projects by the Republic of Karelia at the federal level, the amount of funding under the federal target program "Development of the Republic of Karelia for the period up to 2035 years"), as well as the degree of implementation of key measures of the federal socio-economic policy, including Decree of the President of the Russian Federation of May 7, 2018 No. 204 "On the national goals and strategic objectives of the development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035", measures in the field of development human capital, investment attractiveness, environmental and infrastructure development.

The conservative (inertial) scenario assumes gradual changes in the socio-economic development of the republic, the main parameters of competitiveness will change inertially, including due to the influence of external market factors (preservation of the economic sanctions regime), maintaining the structure and volume of federal support, including the Federal Target Program "Development of the Republic Karelia for the period up to 2035". The federal targeted program itself will be successfully completed, but the likelihood of its continuation after 2035 is assessed as low.

In general, almost the entire "development budget" of the Republic of Karelia will be directed to the implementation of the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation dated 07.05.2018 No. 204 "On the national goals and strategic objectives of the development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035", ensuring the stabilization and balance of the budget system republic, including servicing and reducing the public debt, as well as leveling the possible consequences for the budget of the republic due to possible changes in the system of interbudgetary relations.

The trends of depopulation and monocentricity will continue, although their acceleration will not be recorded, including due to the action of external factors characteristic of most regions of Russia, the implementation of individual federal policy measures. The city of Petrozavodsk will continue to be the key economic center of the republic, whose economy will remain predominantly raw materials and old industrial, with a characteristic low rate of renewal of fixed assets, the use of production technologies of the third and fourth modes.

The Republic of Karelia will continue to inertially lose human capital, this will be partially offset by the influx of personnel for individual investment projects. The development of the economy will follow an inertial model with the preservation or slight growth of extra-budgetary investments in fixed assets. However, their volume will only make it possible to ensure the reproduction of retiring fixed assets and compensate for the decline in their value.

The target scenario assumes the focus of regional policy on solving priority socio-economic problems in such a way that at the first stage the necessary conditions and incentives are created to accelerate the socio-economic development of the Republic of Karelia, at the second stage - to completely eliminate the factors that force the population to leave the region.

The development budget of the Republic of Karelia after 2025 will be based on the approved new FTP after the implementation of the FTP "Development of the Republic of Karelia for the period until 2035", which will allow focusing efforts not only on solving the priority tasks set in Decree of the President of the Russian Federation dated May 7, 2018 No. 204 "On the National Goals and Strategic Objectives of the Development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035", but also on the elimination of individual bottlenecks in all priority areas of the development of the republic - in the social sphere, engineering and transport infrastructure, in the field of environmental development, scientific and technological sphere and etc.

The main infrastructure problems of the republic, including a modern transport system and a communication system (mobile communications and the Internet in all settlements), are expected to be resolved by the end of the 2035s as the level of federal support increases, including within the framework of projects co-financed from the regional budget, attracting extrabudgetary funds.

The key points of growth in the field of economic development will be small and medium-sized investment projects implemented using targeted state support tools, as well as using new and existing industrial policy mechanisms: benefits and forms of support for TASED, services of industrial parks, programs to support development institutions of the Russian Federation, cluster policy mechanisms. A

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

separate point of growth will be small and medium-sized businesses, including high-tech ones. The main increase in the number of new jobs will be provided through the development of mass entrepreneurship, including tourism, hotels and restaurants, trade and services, as well as through the development of social services and health improvement.

In the social sphere, it is planned to create conditions for ensuring a high level of quality of life, the introduction of advanced technologies in healthcare (including digital), ensuring the availability of additional education for children, preschool education. Active support of scientific and educational institutions will continue, conditions will be created to increase the global competitiveness of the scientific and educational sector of the Republic of Karelia. The Republic will retain the status of one of the major Russian centers of science and education.

The Republic of Karelia will use the spatial potential of individual territories. For each territory, smart specialization projects will be identified, a unique role in the socio-economic system of the Russian Federation and the region will be identified, taking into account the diversity and specifics of the available resources. This approach will make it possible to diversify the policy towards municipalities and use the natural advantages of the Republic of Karelia in the diversity of resources and potential of individual territories over other regions of the Russian Federation.

The accelerated (federal) scenario will be implemented in conjunction with the ongoing socio-economic policy at the federal level, including the implementation of measures by the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation of May 7, 2018 No. 204 "On the national goals and strategic objectives of the development of the Russian Federation for the period up to 2035 year", development strategy of the North-West Federal District. The scenario is based on a possible change in federal policy aimed at increasing the share of taxes received by regional and municipal budgets and increasing the independence of regions and municipalities.

The accelerated scenario implies going to the federal level with initiatives and launching large-scale (flagship) projects of federal significance, positioning the Republic of Karelia as one of the best regions of Russia in the environmental sphere, tourism, science and education, as well as production technologies. The credit rating of the region will improve significantly.

When implementing this scenario, it is supposed to solve the main infrastructure problems of the region, including the construction of large linear facilities, energy infrastructure, transport and communications infrastructure. After the successful implementation of the FTP "Development of the Republic of Karelia for the period until 2023", it is possible to approve a new FTP after 2025 and a

significant increase in the participation of the region in the implementation of federal target and investment programs.

The Republic will be transformed in terms of indicators of the quality of life of the population and the value of leisure, the creation of a humanistic urban environment in urban districts, new jobs, the transition to a model of sustainable environmental and economic development. The role of the republic as a center of ecological and health tourism in Russia, as well as a center of science and education of the North, an original and diverse, dynamically developing region with traditional and high-tech industries, is growing.

The region will be aimed at building a new quality of growth based on a new technological paradigm, involving the deep processing of resources, the use of renewable energy sources and waste-free production. A model of sustainable development will be formed, which implies a harmonious and interconnected ecological, social and economic development, which will make it possible to meet the needs of future generations, preserve and expand ecosystems, and move from a model of consumption growth to a model of sustainable growth in the quality of life.

Among the key measures of economic policy, one can single out measures to support the diversification of the economy of single-industry towns, the intensification of international and interregional cooperation, the development and implementation of new forms of state support for investors, the creation and functioning of development institutions (regional industrial development fund, cluster development centers), support for small and medium-sized businesses.

### Development of the road network and roadside infrastructure

The task is to develop and improve the network of public roads, ensuring safe and uninterrupted passenger and freight transportation, increasing the availability and quality of transport services, population mobility, and introducing the principles of zero tolerance for road accidents.

#### Main activities:

increasing the indicators of the transport and operational condition of public roads of regional and local importance;

- elimination of unsatisfactory road conditions that cause a decrease in the average speed of movement on public roads of regional significance and the occurrence of traffic accidents;

- attraction of funds from the federal budget for the implementation of measures for the development of road infrastructure;

- increasing the efficiency of the use of funds allocated for the maintenance and repair of roads of

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

regional and local significance in the Republic of Karelia;

- introduction of modern technologies to increase the overhaul life of roads and artificial structures, including the restoration of road surfaces using recycling technology;

- continuation of work on the transfer to federal ownership of roads owned by the Republic of Karelia (Kochkoma - Tiksha - Ledmozero - Kostomuksha - state border, Petrozavodsk - Oshta, Medvezhyegorsk - Tolvuya - Velikaya Guba - Oyatevshchina, etc.);

- construction of modern bridge crossings instead of wooden ones on public roads of regional and intermunicipal significance, reconstruction of bridge crossings that are in disrepair;

- allocation of subsidies from the Road Fund of the Republic of Karelia to co-finance the expenditure obligations of local governments for the repair of roads and bridge structures in order to improve the condition of local roads in the settlements of the republic;

- creation of modern pedestrian crossings (illumination, zebra, ease of use for pedestrians, etc.) through highways that are in federal and regional ownership, including, if necessary, the installation of traffic lights;

- increase in the number of automatic systems for photo and video recording of traffic violations, including driving into oncoming lanes, monitoring compliance with high-speed traffic, etc., primarily in the most dangerous places in accordance with the statistics of traffic accidents;

- construction of service infrastructure on highways owned by federal and regional authorities (emergency call points, places for recreation);

- development of an action plan to expand the network of forest roads in remote areas at the expense of investors and the federal center;

- reconstruction of the bus station in the city of Petrozavodsk and the backbone network of bus stations of the Republic of Karelia;

- optimization and expansion of the inter-municipal route network of public transport, taking into account the opinion of the population, taking into account the opinion of residents in the construction of new public transport stops;

- renewal of the public transport fleet of republican and municipal motor transport organizations that carry out regular and route transportation of passengers;

- introduction of the principles of zero tolerance for road accidents (creation of additional islands of safety, organization of calm traffic streets, reduction of the maximum speed for vehicles within settlements to 50 km per hour, creation of additional ground pedestrian crossings, etc.).

## Development of railway transport

The task is to develop the railway infrastructure, ensure transit functions, and assist in the development of public passenger transport.

Main activities:

- reconstruction of buildings and structures of the station complex, reconstruction of the railway infrastructure of Petrozavodsk;

- supporting the maintenance of existing volumes of suburban passenger traffic;

- improving the quality of the provision of services for the carriage of passengers by rail;

- development of the East-West transit direction in the Republic of Karelia, taking into account the prospects for the construction of the Belkomur railway.

## Air transport development

The task is the development of civil aviation, the organization of transportation routes in regional and interregional directions.

Main activities:

- implementation of the investment project "Construction of facilities on the territory of the civil sector of the airport "Petrozavodsk" (Besovets)", which provides for the construction of a new terminal building;

- development of regular flights with Moscow, remote regional centers of the Northwestern Federal District, as well as with Helsinki and Lappeenranta to provide transit air transportation;

- reconstruction of a network of landing sites in the Republic of Karelia;

- development of air transportation on local airlines;

- increase in the volume of air transportation of passengers on the route Petrozavodsk - Moscow.

## Development of water transport

The task is to participate in the implementation of federal projects in the field of water transport, infrastructure modernization.

Main activities:

- assistance in the construction of ports on the White Sea, including in the cities of Belomorsk and the city of Kemi (the settlement of Rabocheostrovsk), the reconstruction and construction of mooring walls; expanding the geography of passenger transportation routes by water transport and providing regular flights on the most popular routes;

- inclusion in the federal agenda for the development of the Northern Sea Route, projects for the construction of satellite ports on the territory of the Republic of Karelia;

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHLI (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

- reconstruction and development of facilities of the White Sea-Baltic Canal;
- support for the development of high-speed water transport along the Onega, Ladoga lakes, the White Sea (to Solovki);
- promoting the development of tourist water routes;
- assistance in attracting investments and allocating investment quotas for the modernization and expansion of the fishing fleet;
- development of search and rescue infrastructure.

### Improving the business climate and stimulating entrepreneurial initiative

The task is to develop and implement modern measures to support small and medium-sized businesses, improve the institutional environment in the field of doing business, reduce the shadow sector in the economy, create conditions for the development of enterprises - from micro-business to small, from small to medium, create a favorable environment in which it is profitable engage in entrepreneurship.

#### Main activities:

development of infrastructure to support small and medium-sized businesses, creation and expansion of existing industrial sites, industrial parks and industrial clusters;

expansion of support measures for young entrepreneurs, expansion of the region's participation in all-Russian and corporate projects and programs to support youth entrepreneurship;

the formation of the Karelian support zone as part of the implementation of the state program of the Russian Federation "Socio-economic development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation", which will specialize in technologies in the field of timber and mining, extraction, breeding and processing of bioresources, tourism;

development and implementation of measures to reduce electricity tariffs for small and medium-sized businesses;

expansion of the preferential list of OKVED classes, including types of economic activity, the implementation of which is allowed as a result of the implementation of investment projects at the Nadvoitsy TASED;

making a proposal on the creation of TASED "Kostomuksha";

localization of production facilities of foreign companies by embedding small and medium-sized businesses in supply chains;

development of the institution of mediation to solve problematic issues of small and medium-sized businesses;

increase in the financial base of the Fund for the Promotion of Lending to Small and Medium-Sized Businesses of the Republic of Karelia (credit

company), expansion of the activities of the Center for Entrepreneurship Support of the Republic of Karelia; creation of a digital platform focused on supporting the production and marketing activities of small and medium-sized businesses, including individual entrepreneurs;

development of market and fair trade and increase in food security of remote settlements;

raising business awareness of support measures; positioning of the Republic of Karelia as the best place for the realization of creative potential and individual entrepreneurial initiative on the part of the state and society, not only within but also outside the region;

use of property owned by the Republic of Karelia for the purpose of implementing investment projects, public-private partnership agreements;

ensuring the participation of small and medium-sized business support infrastructure entities (hereinafter referred to as SMEs) in the training programs of SME Corporation JSC;

expanding forms of business support when entering markets, placing locally produced goods in chain stores, creating conditions for promoting locally produced products on the consumer market, including those marked with the "Made in Karelia" sign;

introduction of training courses on the basics of entrepreneurship into school curricula and the expansion of information and training of citizens on the basics of entrepreneurship;

expansion of functionality and promotion of the republican Internet portal for SMEs, modernization, improvement and regular updating of existing portals;

ensuring regular interaction with business associations for the joint development of initiatives in the field of supporting small and medium-sized businesses;

ensuring favorable conditions for the implementation of activities by self-employed citizens through the creation of a new taxation regime (based on the experience of pilot regions), which provides for the transfer of information on sales to the tax authorities of the Russian Federation in an automatic mode, exemption from the obligation to submit reports, as well as the payment of a single payment from revenue, including includes insurance premiums;

organizing and holding events within the framework of international events related to the promotion of entrepreneurship, as well as events encouraging successful results and achievements in business, initial steps in entrepreneurship;

creation of a specialized multifunctional center for business, as well as separate windows for entrepreneurs in existing multifunctional centers;

development of the infrastructure for ensuring industrial growth, including the creation of the Center for Cluster Development of the Republic of Karelia, the Industrial Development Fund of the Republic of Karelia;

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

formation of a handicraft cluster, support for handicrafts, including the improvement of measures to support small businesses;

development of a "road map" for the development and support of creative (creative) industries in Karelia.

Strategic direction "Development of tourism and hospitality industry"

Strategic goal:

preservation of the cultural and historical heritage of the Republic of Karelia and the creation of a modern hospitality industry.

Key Findings:

increasing the tourist attractiveness of the Republic of Karelia;

the growth of the tourist flow;

creation of new objects of tourist display;

development of Karelia as one of the leading tourist destinations in the Russian Federation.

Development of tourism infrastructure

The task is the creation and development of tourist infrastructure facilities, the creation of new and the reconstruction of existing display facilities, the introduction of digital technologies in the field of tourism.

Formation and promotion of tourism brands

The task is to develop and implement a system of measures aimed at increasing the recognition of tourist brands in the Republic of Karelia.

Creation of a tourist cluster

The task is to create a single tourism cluster by coordinating the activities of large and small organizations, the formation of interconnected tourist destinations and a single network of routes.

Stimulating the development of various types of tourism

The task is to promote the development of various types of tourism to create conditions for multi-format recreation, including event-based, cultural-historical, health-improving, ecological, sports, rural and other types of tourism.

Development of single-industry towns

The task is to increase the investment attractiveness and comfort of living in mono-profile settlements, create conditions for the diversification of a mono-profile economy and the creation of new jobs.

Development and support of rural areas and historical small settlements

The task is to increase the attractiveness and promote the development of small settlements and rural areas of Karelia, while maintaining their specificity and originality.

Strategic direction "Human capital and social sphere"

Strategic goal:

ensuring a high quality of life for the population by increasing the availability of high-quality social services, implementing spiritual and cultural development, and achieving interethnic harmony.

Key Findings:

increase in life expectancy;

an increase in the birth rate, a decrease in mortality, including infant mortality;

growing popularity of a healthy lifestyle, an increase in the proportion of the population involved in physical culture and sports;

improving the quality of services provided in the education system (all types of education), the introduction of continuous education technologies;

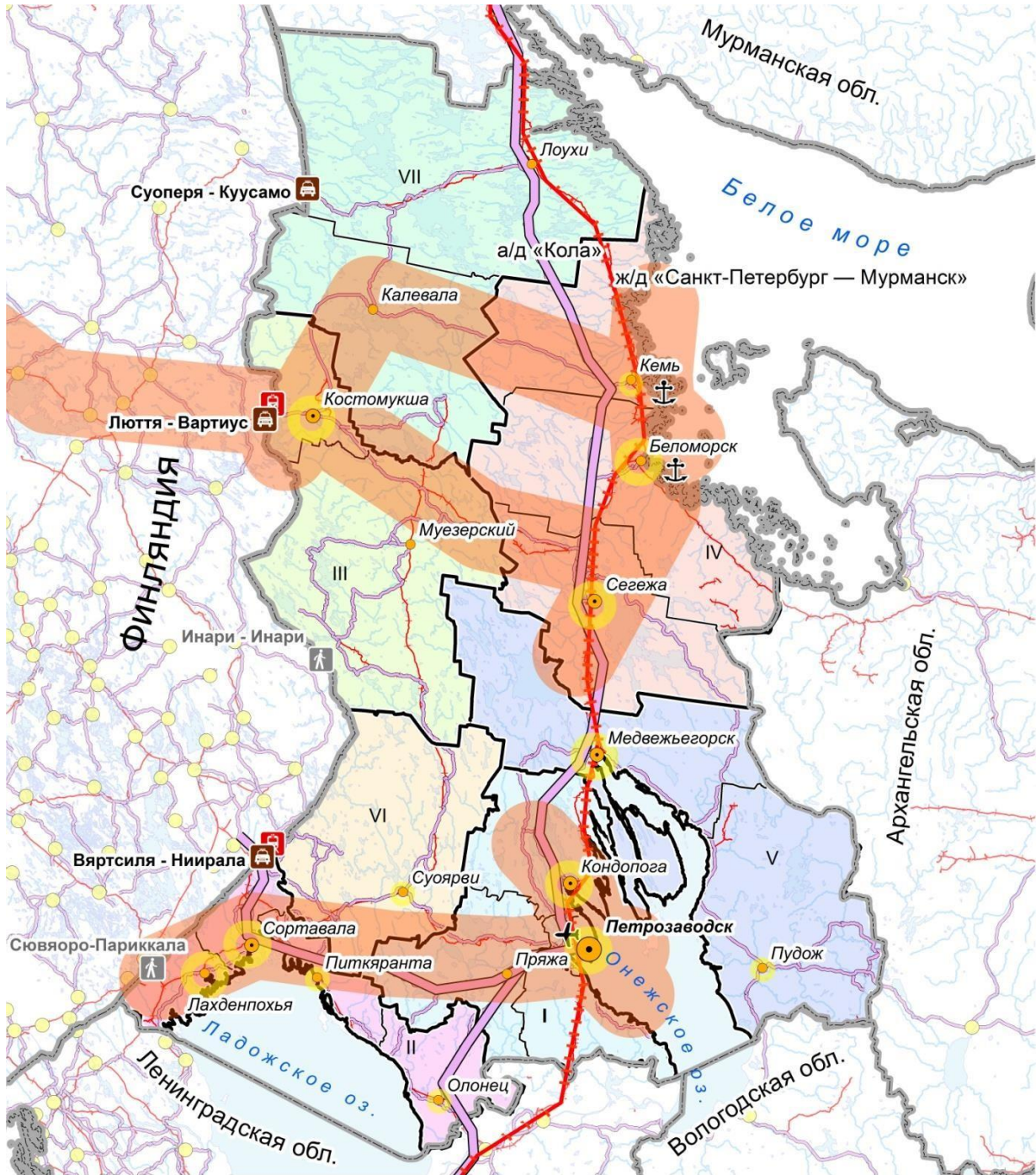
increasing the availability and quality of health care services, the introduction of modern technologies in health care;

growth in attendance at cultural institutions.

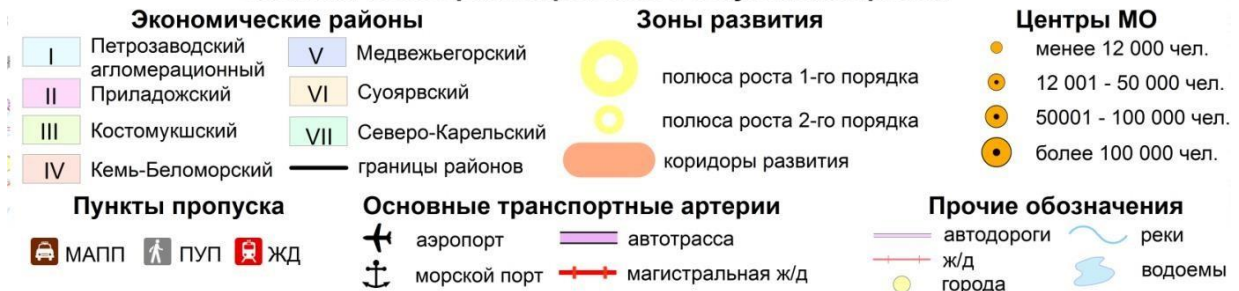
Taking into account the existing specialization of territories and connections, the following areas, growth poles and development corridors have been identified (Figure 6).

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



**Экономическое районирование Республики Карелия**



**Figure 6. Economic zoning of the Republic of Karelia**

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

The Republic of Karelia favorably combines an advantageous transport and geographic position with a preserved natural resource potential, a rich cultural, historical, ethnographic and religious heritage. This rather unique combination of various tourist and recreational resources creates a good basis and prospect for the development of various types and forms of tourism.

Sixteen ethno-cultural historical territories with a preserved historical and cultural environment have been identified in the republic, more than 4,500 cultural heritage sites have been concentrated.

Tourism in the Republic of Karelia is recognized as a priority sector of the economy, which is becoming increasingly important in the development of the

entire economic potential of the republic. Karelia traditionally holds a leading position among Russian regions in terms of tourist attractiveness.

The tourist flow to the Republic of Karelia has been steadily growing over the past years. The share of organized tourists in the total number of visitors is about 60% (800 thousand people in 2022). The total flow of visitors, including sightseers, in 2018 amounted to 1320 thousand people. Among the tourist centers in terms of attendance, the leaders are: the mountain park "Ruskeala" - 350 thousand tourists, the museum "Kizhi" - 220 thousand people, the reserve "Kivach" - 120 thousand people, the island of Valaam - 100 thousand people. (Fig. 7, 8).



**Figure 7. Mountain Park "Ruskeala"**



**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>6.317</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>1.582</b>	<b>ПИИЦ</b> (Russia) = <b>3.939</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.771</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>7.184</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>



**Figure 7. Museum-Reserve "Kizhi"**

The tourism industry of Karelia in the last three years has a leading growth rate among all sectors of the regional economy. At the end of 2022, the tourist flow of organized tourists amounted to 830 thousand people, and the closed borders in the context of the pandemic and the relatively calm epidemiological situation in the spring and summer of 2022 made Karelia even more attractive for tourists. According to the Tourism Department of Karelia, only in July and

August 2022, 350 thousand people visited the republic, while for the full summer season of 2021 - 100 thousand less, the growth in tourist flow was about 40%, and according to At the end of 2022, 790 thousand people visited the republic (Table 1). Attendance at the mountain park "Ruskeala" has almost doubled, and in the neighboring Sortavala there were no empty rooms in the hotels.

**Table 1. Tourist flow to the Republic of Karelia**

2019	2020	2021	2022
The volume of organized tourist flow, thousand people			
780	800	830	790

In the structure of the gross regional product, the share of tourism is 4-5%. In the structure of the all-Russian volume of tourist services, the share of the republic is more than 3%.

In total, the tourist complex of the republic is able to provide up to 3 million overnight stays per year in comfortable accommodation facilities. However, with a steady increase in the number of tourists visiting the region, today there are not enough hotels, especially in the budget, as well as high and premium price segments.

A feature of Karelia is the uneven distribution of the tourist flow across the regions of the republic due to the different levels of development of the tourist infrastructure and the availability of tourist resources. Currently, the main tourist load falls on two areas - the center and the Northern Ladoga region, where two

world-famous attractive tourism centers are located - the Kizhi Museum-Reserve and Valaam, as well as the capital of Karelia - Petrozavodsk, which are the most visited objects of the republic. The Karelian tourist flow has a pronounced seasonality, as it falls mainly on three summer months. Due to these circumstances, there is a problem of exceeding the maximum recreational load on the main tourist sites (Kizhi, Valaam).

Tourism in Karelia is an integrated type of economic activity that allows, with relatively small investments, to ensure the economically viable use and reproduction of local tourism resources and potential. Therefore, for the conditions of Karelia, it is legitimate to choose the tourist direction of the region's development as a priority in relation to its industrial development.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

The rapid growth of the tourist flow to the border mountain park "Ruskeala" gave the region a synergistic effect, bringing together about three hundred people around the project - representatives of small businesses and travel companies (Figure 8). The

main thing here is not to disturb the existing natural balance, not to turn the protected area into a typical mass amusement park.



**Figure 8. Mountain park "Ruskeala". Boat ride on the platform**

The border town of Sortavala is also one of the tourist centers of the Republic of Karelia. An important role in this is played by its role as one of the starting points of tourist routes to Valaam and to the mountain park "Ruskeala", which is served by the retro train "Nikolaev Express". A large flow of foreign tourists is provided by the so-called nostalgic tourism for the former inhabitants of the Ladoga region, now living in Finland, as well as the participation of the city in the international tourist route "Blue Road", stretching from the coast of Norway through Sweden and Finland to the Karelian Pudozh. Sortavala is the only historical city of the Republic of Karelia that has preserved its integral architectural and historical appearance. There are about two hundred architectural monuments in the styles of Finnish wooden romanticism, northern inter-military modernism, functionalism, neoclassicism, wooden empire style of the mid-19th - early 20th centuries. The city has a well-developed service and hospitality sector, there is a huge number of mini-hotels, guest houses for a small town. A possible increase in the status of the city of Sortavala to the level of a historical city of federal significance will provide an opportunity to receive additional funding from the federal budget to create an attractive urban environment, in particular, to improve and create new comfortable public spaces. This will also increase the tourist attractiveness of the border town, through which guests of Karelia go to Valaam. A possible increase in the status of the city of

Sortavala to the level of a historical city of federal significance will provide an opportunity to receive additional funding from the federal budget to create an attractive urban environment, in particular, to improve and create new comfortable public spaces. This will also increase the tourist attractiveness of the border town, through which guests of Karelia go to Valaam. A possible increase in the status of the city of Sortavala to the level of a historical city of federal significance will provide an opportunity to receive additional funding from the federal budget to create an attractive urban environment, in particular, to improve and create new comfortable public spaces. This will also increase the tourist attractiveness of the border town, through which guests of Karelia go to Valaam.

In 2021, the city received the status of the New Year's capital of Russia, having received a large number of tourists in the winter. With the introduction of the high-speed train "Lastochka" in 2022, running between St. Petersburg and Sortavala, in the foreseeable future, the tourist flow to the border town is expected to triple. In 2023, Russian Railways launched a new direct route Moscow - Sortavala - Ruskeala Park.

In 2022, the implementation of the Legends of Karelia shopping mall was launched on the territory of the republic. The Karelian Belomorje shopping mall is also being formed, which is scheduled for creation in 2024.

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>PIHIQ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

### Conclusion

The conducted studies allow us to conclude that the tourism industry in the European North of Russia is in the stage of active development and this is justified. At the moment, it is important to develop competitive innovative tourism products and investment projects. Tourism is actively developing in all regions of the Russian North, there is an annual growth in tourist flow.

Based on an expert assessment of the analysis of the current state, main problems and prospects for the development of tourism in the regions of the European North of Russia and the western sector of the Russian Arctic, the economic, geographical and sociocultural aspects of the sustainable development of the tourism industry have been studied. Emphasis is placed on the most dynamically developing areas and types of tourism. Particular attention is paid to the development of Arctic, environmental, international, cultural, educational, event, cruise and rural tourism in the regions. Among the new trends are gastronomic, industrial, scientific, socially responsible (“volunteer holidays”) tourism.

Tourism in the northern regions is rapidly diversifying, but in the system of development of the hospitality sector for each territory, a regional strategy is needed for the quality of service, the availability of not only basic services, but also those that increase the attractiveness of the trip through event events, the emergence of new attractions, tourist information navigation and quality of the urban environment. It is shown that the COVID-19 pandemic had a significant impact on the development of the tourism industry in 2020. At present, the main tourist destinations are being transformed and tourist flows are being redistributed. During the pandemic and post-pandemic periods, special attention should be paid to active types of natural and ecotourism in sparsely populated places, individual and family tours, car and cycling tourism. Among the new areas of northern tourism after the restrictions are lifted will be digital detox tours (time spent away from the Internet, computers and phones) and plogging. Among the innovative types of ecological tourism infrastructure in the Russian North, the most promising are glampings and eco-hotels, which have become widespread in the countries of Northern Europe. The main factors contributing to the investment and tourist attractiveness of the regions of the Western Arctic and the European North of Russia are identified: the presence of unique display facilities and high-quality infrastructure, geographical location and transport accessibility, tourist potential and branding of tourism centers, the price of a tourist product and its profitability, advertising and informational fame of the region, the level of security for tourists, the level of state support for entrepreneurs.

The main problems of tourism development in the Western Arctic are identified, due to the high cost

of tourism and transport services, the underdevelopment of the relevant infrastructure, the lack of ice-class ships, institutional and environmental restrictions. The key problems of northern tourism are also the lack of quality accommodation facilities, the low level of service, the poor condition of the road transport network, the lack of financial resources for the creation of new display facilities and the restoration of architectural monuments, the inaccessibility of unique territories and the seasonality factor.

To implement plans for the development of tourism in the Russian North, a large-scale modernization and construction of tourism and transport infrastructure is necessary. The lack of infrastructure facilities and their significant deterioration are the main obstacles to the development of tourism.

Tourism is one of the promising areas for diversifying economic activities in small settlements of the North.

The most cost-effective, competitive and promising for the development of unique tourist and recreational areas of the European North is the use of a cluster approach. Innovative investment projects in the field of tourism should increase the tourist flow, which, in turn, will attract additional investment in the modernization of infrastructure and the further sustainable development of unique territories, and improve the quality of life of the local population.

A specific problem of small historical towns in the Russian North lies in a significant proportion of the aging wooden fund of valuable environmental development, the loss of which and the corresponding change in the urban historical environment means the erosion of the identity of the settlement. The sphere of cultural and historical heritage - the protection of architectural monuments and the preservation of the authentic appearance - is the main problem of small towns in terms of culture and tourism.

The priority strategic tasks for the development of tourism are formulated:

- ❖ increasing the availability of unique Arctic and northern territories and remote tourism centers for tourists with different income levels;
- ❖ organization of regional tourism and recreation clusters based on the modernization of transport and tourism infrastructures;
- ❖ attracting investments in the tourism industry in the form of a private-public partnership;
- ❖ strategy for the global promotion of the tourism potential of the Russian Arctic and the Russian North;
- ❖ the development of competition in the field of transport, the simplification of logistics, the combination of sea cruises with air tourism will make it possible to reduce the cost of travel for those wishing to visit the unique high-latitude Arctic territories and increase the tourist flow;

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

- ❖ minimization of anthropogenic impact on the natural environment of the Russian North;
- ❖ preservation of objects of historical, cultural and natural heritage;
- ❖ expansion of the list of historical cities and settlements of federal significance, revision and addition of the register of cultural heritage sites of the European North;
- ❖ in the cities of the region, it is necessary to increase the level of comfort of the urban environment

through the development of friendly public spaces and new attractions (pedestrian zones, embankments, bike paths, museum quarters, street art objects and murals, creative installations, small urban sculpture) and tourist information navigation;

- ❖ creation of an attractive image of local identity and branding of tourism centers of the European North, including in the Republic of Karelia.

## References:

1. (2021). *National tourism portal. Regions of Russia. News*. Retrieved 20.01.2021 from <https://russia.travel/>
2. (2021). *Arctic tourism in Russia* / otv. editor Yu. F. Lukin; comp. tourist guide for the regions of N. K. Kharlampiev; Sev. (Arctic) feder. un-t; St. Petersburg. state un-t. (p.96). Arkhangelsk: NArFU.
3. Lukin, Yu. F. (2021). Arctic tourism: rating of regions, opportunities and threats. *Arktika i Sever*. 2021 No. 23, pp.116-122.
4. (2023). *Expert: in the Arctic, it is necessary to create mini-tour clusters within the framework of protected areas*. Retrieved 07/10/2023 from <https://tass.ru/ekonomika/6316401>
5. Bertosh, A. A. (2019). Arctic tourism: conceptual features and features. *Proceedings of the Kola Scientific Center of the Russian Academy of Sciences*. 2019. V. 10, No. 7-17, pp. 169-180.
6. Leonidova, E. G. (2018). *Development of tourism in the regions of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation. North and the Arctic in the new paradigm of world development. Luzin Readings - 2016: Materials of the VIII Intern. scientific-practical. conf. (Apatity, April 14-16, 2016)*. Apatity: IEP KSC RAS, 2018, pp. 206-211.
7. (2023). *How to tame any tourist in the Arctic*. Retrieved 07/09/2023 from <https://nordnews.ru/news/2019/09/05/?newsid=115305>
8. Khotenov, A. V. (2023). *500 places of the Russian North that you need to see*. (pp.3-4). Moscow: Martin.
9. (2002). *Karelia: epic tourism program "Kalevala": Sat. report and theses. message intl. scientific-practical. conf. (Republic of Karelia)*. (pp.59-86). Petrozavodsk, November 20-21, 2002). Moscow: RIB "Tourist".
10. (2023). *Official Internet portal of the Republic of Karelia. News // Tourism*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <http://gov.karelia.ru/news/?tags=15>
11. (2023). *Investment portal of the Republic of Karelia. Tourism*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <http://kareliainvest.ru/republicforinvestors/projects/turizm/>
12. (2023). *Unified tourist passport of the Republic of Karelia*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <https://ar.investinrussia.com/data/image/regions/unif-turpass2016.pdf>
13. (2023). *Karelia: Tourist portal. Kinerma*. Retrieved 07/10/2023 from <http://www.ticrk.ru/regions/region/settlement/?PID=7515&ID=8172>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 21.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Artur Alexandrovich Blagorodov**

Institute of Service and Entrepreneurship(branch) DSTU  
master

**Vladimir Timofeevich Prokhorov**

Institute of Service and Entrepreneurship(branch) DSTU  
Doctor of Technical Sciences, Professor,  
Shakhty, Russia

**Natalya Vasilievna Tikhonova**

Kazan National Research Technological University  
Doctor of Technical Sciences, Professor,  
Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan

**Galina Yurievna Volkova**

LLC TsPOSN «Orthomoda»  
Doctor of Economics, Professor  
Moscow, Russia

## SMALL AND MEDIUM ENTERPRISES (SMEs) - THE BASIS FOR SUCCESSFUL SOCIO-ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE ARCTIC REGIONS OF THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION WITHIN THE NORTHERN SEA ROUTE. MESSAGE 2 MURMANSK REGION

**Abstract:** the article deals with the actual problems of the development of the tourism industry in the European North of Russia (Murmansk, Arkhangelsk regions and the Republic of Karelia) and in the high-latitude territories of the Western Arctic. Practical proposals and recommendations are given, priority tasks are formulated to solve the main socio-economic problems of using the tourist and recreational potential, developing inbound and domestic tourism for the sustainable development of regions, unique territories and tourism centers. The results can be used to improve the legislative and regulatory acts of the tourism industry, to increase its competitiveness in the North of Russia.

**Key words:** Republic of Karelia, Murmansk region, Arkhangelsk region, Arctic zones, northern sea route, efficiency, social development, priority, population, comfort, tourism, hotel business, paradigm, economic policy, financial stability.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Blagorodov, A. A., Prokhorov, V. T., Tikhonova, N. V., & Volkova, G. Yu. (2023). Small and medium enterprises (SMEs) - the basis for successful socio-economic development of the arctic regions of the Russian Federation within the Northern Sea route. Message 2 Murmansk region. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 172-188.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-23> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.23>  
**Scopus ASCC:** 2000.

### Introduction

UDC338.48:374.58.

On the territory of the Russian North there are 22 historical cities of regional significance, of which five are small towns that have the status of a historical city

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

of federal significance. The shortened list for 2023 of particularly valuable historical cities in Russia includes small towns in the Russian North that have retained most of the old buildings: the Vologda cities of Belozersk, Totma and Veliky Ustyug, the Arkhangelsk cities of Kargopol and Solvychegodsk. Such large cities as Arkhangelsk, Cherepovets and Vologda have lost the official status of a historical city.

And in Solvychegodsk, one of the smallest cities in Russia with a unique mud treatment resort and a powerful cultural heritage associated with the Stroganov dynasty, information stands about the history of existing and lost architectural monuments were installed, a sculpture park of the Kozma Prutkov festival was created, and the first comfortable accommodation facility was opened - a hotel "Merchant".

The former county town of Shenkursk is attractive to tourists not only for its well-preserved historical buildings, but also for its natural heritage -

within the city there are several old age pine forests on the hilly banks of the Vaga.

Because of this feature, a tourist brand of the city was developed - "Pine Holidays in Shenkursk".

Potential candidates for joining the ASKDGR are small towns of the Russian North that have preserved authentic architectural monuments, the original culture of local residents and the traditional historical habitat - Kirillov and Belozersk (Figure 1). In 2022, the candidate cities of Kargopol and Solvychegodsk have already been included in the association. Kargopol in the same year received the status of a UNESCO creative city among the creative cities of the world in the field of crafts and folk art. In Russia, apart from Kargopol, only two cities, Ulyanovsk and Kazan, have such a high status. This network brings together cities based on creativity: arts and crafts and folk art, music, design, literature and gastronomy. The cities that are part of the UNESCO network define creativity and the creative economy as one of the priority areas in their development.



Picture 1. Kirillo-Belozersky Monastery

Among the small historical cities of the Russian North, Kirillov occupies the first place in terms of attendance, receiving about 360 thousand tourists a year (of which 66 thousand are foreigners), mainly as part of a water cruise along the Volga-Baltic River, the most popular tourist route in the European North. The economic potential of the Kirillovsky district is 45% formed by the tourism and services sector. Kirillov is one of the three most popular small towns in Russia

among tourists. In the summer season, the Gorica pier annually receives up to 500 cruise ships.

Several residences of the Arkhangelsk region are included in the federal project "Fairytale Map of Russia". The most famous among tourists are the brands of the former county town of Yarensk, Lensky district, "Motherland of Mother Winter" and "I'll leave everything, I'll go to Yarensk." Despite the transport remoteness of Yarensk, the tourist flow to the ancient village has increased from 200 people. in 2012 up to

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

19 thousand people. in 2017. Unfortunately, the deplorable state of most of the historical buildings of the village does not allow it to count on potential inclusion in the ASKDGR in the near future.

Small towns, especially those with a rich historical heritage, are waiting for simple and quick solutions for their development, a sharp increase in the number of tourists, and hence an increase in income and employment. Cultural tourism is the basis for economic growth and an opportunity for the sustainable development of the historic city. However, one should not expect mass tourism in small towns, especially in cities with underdeveloped logistics (for example, Kargopol and Mezen). Tourism for such cities will not become a city-forming industry, but can be an important development factor.

Mass tourists, as a rule, choose the most affordable, optimal places to visit in terms of price and quality. Any successful examples of tourism development in the northern towns are associated either with strong branding, mainly using federal resources (for example, Veliky Ustyug), or with a favorable geographical position (for example, Kirillov).

Each small historical city should look for its own special zest, which could be the main elements in creating an attractive image of local identity. It is necessary to look for some little things that could become branded products, symbols of the city and which are specific or even unique. For example, in Kargopol there are public wash basins. These are places where clothes are still rinsed in river water after washing, and there are specially adapted buildings for this. Absolutely usual thing for a Kargopol citizen, but completely unusual and interesting for a tourist. Even in Kargopol there is a well-known Kargopol toy and “sushchik”, dried fish in a special way for cooking fish soup. Perhaps, with good marketing, all these artifacts could become a commercial product, subject to an increase in the tourist flow to the city.

Obviously, for successful development, the economy of a small town can only be diversified. Moreover, the accelerated development of tourism and the experience economy as the dominant one carries certain risks for the identity of the city. A small town like Kargopol can earn partly from timber processing, partly from agriculture, and partly from tourism (mainly domestic). Sustainable development requires something that generates external demand for the city's attractiveness.

In small towns, the departing youth can be replaced by people (for example, the creative intelligentsia), who, on the contrary, are ready to leave the big and expensive city, where they already experience discomfort from the high pace of life. How can Kargopol attract them? Calmness, social homogeneity, relatively low cost of living. A mutually beneficial exchange is possible: a big city needs active, young people, and a small city needs creative,

calm and mature people. It should be a new economy of services associated with a different workforce, this approach can be effective for small towns. We must try to "sell" the attractiveness of solitude and locality. Places like Kargopol can offer this. In Kargopol it is possible to find your own unique core, which can be a common passion for history, folk culture.

In the conditions of the almost complete destruction of the real sector of the economy of a small historical city, only culture and the creative industry can become a source of sustainable development.

This fundamental reversal implies that the result of activity will have a cumulative effect, i.e., it will accumulate for a long time before its visible manifestation, and the increase in income and well-being of the population will not occur at the first stages. The difficult conditions of Kargopol, associated with social conservation and economic stagnation, together with the surrounding natural landscape and the ancient history of the North Russian lands, make the idea of a reserved northern Russia the most promising. Unification of the interpretation of the medieval history of Kargopol as the center of the Russian North, plus the unification of mythologems with the subsequent creation of museums, schools of arts and crafts, cultural attractions are the most basic direction of a turn towards culture in the existing conditions.

One of the serious problems of small towns is the low social activity of residents, the lack of effective technologies for involving the population in the development of the city. An example should be taken from Totma, where a very active initiative community was formed on the basis of local museum historians: both activists and business became more active, the authorities supported, everyone was connected by one specific goal - the survival and development of the city at the expense of the socio-cultural sphere and tourism. This synergy worked and captivated the entire population of the city.

In the historical cities of the Russian North, it is necessary to create a comfortable urban environment based on the development of friendly public spaces and new attractions (pedestrian zones, embankments, bike paths, the museum quarter, street art objects and murals, creative installations, small urban sculpture) and tourist information navigation on base for the installation of signs, information boards and stands with tourist maps on historical streets and cultural heritage sites. The stands can display a photo history or legend associated with a particular architectural monument. It is possible to organize pedestrian thematic tourist routes with drawing them and display objects on information stands with maps and even color marking of routes on the sidewalks (the best examples are the historical settlements of the Perm Territory, the city of Kotelnich).

When designing urban cycle paths and cycle lanes, it must be taken into account that they must be

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 6.317	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 1.582	<b>ПИИЦ (Russia)</b> = 3.939	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.771	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 7.184	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

safe and separated from pedestrian paths and the roadway. To create a developed cycling infrastructure in cities and use it all year round, we can take into account the positive experience of developing cycling in northern European cities and Russian Almeteyvsk, where people ride bicycles all year round, including winter.

The quality of working out a comfortable urban environment directly affects the tourist attractiveness of the city. The formation of profiles of high-quality public spaces is the first step towards the sustainable development of hospitable territories, a necessary factor in the return of the tourist flow. The main principles of open public spaces are: safety (from crime and cars), comfort, the presence of points of attraction and activities for local residents and tourists. Public spaces need to be created where they will be in real demand, with good accessibility for people. On a crowded pedestrian street or embankment with saturated places of attraction, investment and tourist attractiveness increases, small and medium-sized businesses are actively developing, and the level of street crime is decreasing.

With existing problems with budgetary financing in cities, it is possible to use the innovative method of tactical urbanism in the transformation of urban public spaces. Tactical urbanism is a relatively new concept introduced in 2010. In fact, this is a general term that describes methods for rapidly changing the urban environment with a minimum of financial resources and the active participation of local communities. Urban designer Eric Reynolds described the term as follows: "Easy. Fast. Cheap". After all, the idea of tactical urbanism is to take part of the territory of the city and transform the urban environment as soon as possible and with minimal effort.

The active participation and interest of the local population in the creation of a comfortable tourist urban environment, the preservation and effective use of cultural heritage, as well as its cooperation with the tourism industry and local authorities is necessary. (figure 2).

Baseline data for socio-economic development for the period up to 2035



**Figure 2. Administrative-territorial division of the Murmansk region**

During the forecast period, the increase in cargo turnover through the Murmansk transport hub, integrated into transport system of international corridors "North-South" and "West-East" will make a significant contribution to the activation of the commercial operation of the Northern Sea Route.

Orientation of the Murmansk transport hub to provide both export and cabotage transportation of a wide range of cargo will strengthen its position among the ports of the Northern Basin, including in

connection with the possible reorientation of Russian cargo transshipped today in the ports of the Baltic countries.

The development and competitiveness of the region's transport system will be ensured through the implementation of a comprehensive plan for the modernization and expansion of the main infrastructure, including the Integrated Development of the Murmansk Transport Hub project, as well as the project to create an LNG MPC. The transport



## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

infrastructure operating in the region will also be improved, including in terms of increasing the carrying capacity of the railway section from Volkhovstroy to Murmansk.

In 2035, it is predicted that the volume of cargo handling in seaports will increase by 2.0 times compared to the level of 2023 (up to 104.3 million tons). At the same time, in 2024 it is planned to start transshipment of coal for export through the Lavna coal transshipment complex. Based on cautious assumptions on the timing of the implementation of the project to create the LNG RPC, the start of LNG transshipment through this complex will be taken into account from 2026.

According to the target option, the volume of transshipped cargo will exceed the level of the base case, primarily due to the full-scale implementation of the Integrated Development of the Murmansk Transport Hub project, including taking into account the proposed construction and start-up of oil and container terminals, as well as a terminal for transshipment of fertilizers after 2025.

The volume of cargo handling by the ports and terminals of the Murmansk region under this option by the end of the forecast period will increase to 117 million tons and exceed the level of 2023 by 2.2 times.

The Murmansk region is an attractive region for tourists due to its location and unique natural and geographical conditions. The Murmansk region, washed by two seas at once, has the longest coastline in Russia. Even the icy northern sea provides unique opportunities for recreation and travel. The growing popularity of tourism on the Kola Peninsula is

facilitated by a wide variety of natural conditions. Tundra, forest-tundra, forests, mountains, seas, rivers and lakes coexist in the Murmansk region. On its territory there are more than 111 thousand lakes, 20 thousand rivers, in which valuable species of fish are found, and salmon is a real hallmark of the region.

An analysis of the current state of tourism in the Murmansk region allows us to draw conclusions about the positive dynamics in the development of this area. There is an annual growth of domestic and inbound tourist flow. The increase in the tourist flow (about 20%) is the result of the active and competent promotion of the Murmansk region as a tourist destination in the domestic and international markets. In this regard, the tourism business of the region also brings significant income.

In 2022, the region was visited by 438 thousand tourists, of which about 64 thousand were foreign tourists. In 2023, the tourist flow has already amounted to 458 thousand people (table 1) (of which 17% are foreign tourists). In the summer season of 2022, eight cruise ships with 2,000 passengers entered the port of Murmansk. As a rule, most tourists arriving in the Murmansk region visit Murmansk, the world's largest city located above the Arctic Circle. The main object of the tourist show in Murmansk is the atomic icebreaker-museum "Lenin" - the world's first surface vessel with a nuclear power plant. Near the parking lot of the nuclear-powered ship, at the sea station (sea facade) with a miniature embankment, in 2022 a new public space appeared with painted boats and a landscaped square (Figure 3.).

**Table 1. Tourist flow to the Murmansk region, thousand people**

Index	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022
Total number of tourists	292	330	413.7	438	458
Russian	271.3	291	361.8	374	381
Foreign	20.5	39	51.9	64 (12 - China; 7 - Thailand)	77 (19 - China)

Currently, a new investment project for the revitalization of New Murmansk is being developed, which involves the construction of a congress center, a hotel, a yacht club on the shore of the Kola Bay, embankment equipment, the Arctic Museum, a food

court and fish market area, cafes, for which the territory is given former shipyard. The project includes the development of the territories of the auto, sea and railway stations and their integration into a single transport interchange hub.

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India)	= 6.317	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 1.582	ПИИЦ (Russia)	= 3.939	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.771	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 7.184	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350



**Figure 3. Murmansk. Embankment of the sea station**

5 billion rubles have been allocated from the federal budget for these purposes. As part of the priority development area “Murmansk – the Capital of the Arctic”, a comprehensive renovation of Murmansk Airport and its development as a hub airport with the reception of long-haul ships bypassing the Moscow air hub is also envisaged. Compared to neighboring regions of the Russian Federation, the Murmansk region has a competitive advantage in the following types of recreational activities: recreational fishing, observation of the northern lights, geological and mineralogical, business, sea cruise, ski and ski (the longest snow season in the Russian Federation) tourism. Nature-oriented ecotourism has been

recognized as the most promising direction of tourism in the Kola North. Natural reserves have great recreational potential: the Kutsa and Seidyavr reserves, the Khibiny National Park, natural park "Sredny and Rybachy Peninsulas", Lapland reserve and reserve "Pasvik". The creation of new protected areas is not only a limitation, but also new opportunities for the sustainable development of territories. If properly regulated, eco-tourism can help. The ancient polar villages of Teriberka and Varzuga are among the most attractive villages in Russia for ecological and rural tourism (Figure 4).



**Figure 4. Varzuga village**

According to the regional branch of the Russian Geographical Society (RGS), new tourism trends in the Murmansk region include, namely:

1. *Military historical tourism.* Since the Great Patriotic War and later, many old military facilities have remained in the Arctic. Despite being

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

abandoned, they look very picturesque. Of particular note is Site 52. This is a former secret military facility - a storage facility for nuclear warheads. Submarines of the Northern Fleet served here. Since the early 1990s nothing atomic remained here, and the military unit was finally disbanded. Here, in the future, it is possible to organize a museum of the history of submarine forces and conduct excursions like the Balaklava military bunker museum in Sevastopol. Another similar facility, still waiting for its guests, is the port of Vladimir in the Ure Bay. This is also the base of the Northern Fleet, a deserted city. The old position of rocketmen is also being prepared for visits, where an interactive project is planned.

2. *Year-round motorcycle tourism.* Motorcycle tourism is a very promising direction. With the assistance of the Russian Geographical Society and "Motobukhta", a tour of the Murmansk region "Motozapolyarnik" was developed. This is an ecological and local history tour through the most beautiful places of the Kola Arctic. The route with a length of 1157 kilometers is designed for seven to ten days. It will be a real Kola "circumnavigation".

3. *Historical and ethnographic tourism.* The Murmansk region is also famous for "places of power" associated with the ancient beliefs of the Sami people, the secret of ancient Hyperborea and ancient Pomeranian villages with unique wooden architecture. The Murmansk branch of the Russian Geographical Society plans routes both for lovers of mysticism and for those who are ready to immerse themselves in the history of the region. Many of these places are only accessible with experienced guides. For example, many guests of the region aspire to the sacred place of the Saami Seidyavr, but this route is not at all easy, and even dangerous for beginners. The Lovozero tundra is a very remote and harsh place. It is planned to organize walking and boat routes on Seydozero with experienced guides who will help you behave correctly in this place, tell the most interesting facts, show objects that you can't always find on your own. In the south of the Kola Peninsula, on the northern coast of the Kandalaksha Bay of the White Sea, there is an ancient Pomeranian village of Porya Guba. In the XVI century, it was prosperous: there was a large salt of the Solovetsky monastery - twenty varnits. In the Soviet years, the village slowly died, was resettled and abandoned. But the charm of the place, the ancient Pomeranian settlement, can nevertheless be felt there and promisingly used for organizing educational sightseeing tours and expeditions.

4. *Scientific tourism.* The Kola Peninsula is a place with unique northern nature. There are several protected areas in the Murmansk region, in which ecological educational tourism has been actively developing in recent years. Animal observations are becoming more accessible not only to specialists, but also to those who are attracted to wildlife. One of these

areas, very popular all over the world, is birdwatching - bird watching.

One of the most famous travel agencies developing scientific-geological and mineralogical tourism in the Kola North is Nord Stone, based in Apatity. The company organizes scientific and educational expeditions without backpacks and tents to the Khibiny together with scientists from the Kola Scientific Center of the Russian Academy of Sciences. The most popular program is "Blue Mountains and the White Sea" along the route "Kirovsk - Kandalaksha - Varzuga". During the day, tourists travel light on foot, and spend the night in hotels and guest houses with all amenities.

The Murmansk region entered the "gold" group of the National Inbound Tourism Rating - 2022, taking 18th place out of 85 and 2nd place among the regions included in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, second only to the Republic of Karelia. The compilers gave informal names to the rating groups. They are connected with the classification of hotels and the designations of the level of service accepted all over the world: "5 stars", "4 stars" and "3 stars". The Murmansk region entered the group with the conditional name "5 stars". Getting into the Top 20 of the Murmansk region is explained by the fact that the region is mostly located beyond the Arctic Circle and tourists from all over the world come here to see the northern lights. According to the criterion "The number of foreign tourists accommodated per year per 1000 inhabitants of this region", the Murmansk region also entered the Top 20 and took 11th place. According to the data,

Currently, a vector has been chosen to promote the tourism products of the Murmansk region to the markets of China and the countries of Southeast Asia. Thanks to the active development of this direction in recent years, there has been a significant increase in the influx of tourists from China - up to 19 thousand people in 2021. the number of visitors from Thailand increased sharply - from 200 to 7,000 people. A good marketing ploy was the Russian-Thai film "Northern Lights of Love", which was filmed in Teriberka. The main brand that attracts tourists to the region is the northern lights.

Other important attractions of the Kola North are snow and Sami culture. The artificially created attraction - the Sami village "Saam Syit" - is visited by almost all foreign tourists arriving in the region mainly from Asian countries. The tourist flow growing every year, unfortunately, leads to a decrease in the quality of service and inflated prices. Russian tourists in their reviews often complain about the low level of service, the high cost of services and poor quality food in the Sami village. In the Murmansk region, the main centers of ethnographic tourism are: the village of Lovozero (there is a Sami museum, a national cultural center, summer and winter Sami games are held), the village of Umba (the venue for

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

the international folklore festival of the countries of the Barents Region), the authentic museum Pomor fishing tonya Tetrino on the shores of the White Sea and the village of Loparskoye (the Sami tribal community hosts tourists). In the suburban Murmansk village of Molochny in 2019, a small open-air exposition of Sami life was organized. In the village of Lovozero, it is planned to create an ethnographic village on the shores of Lake Popovskoye - the venue for the international Sami games. In the ethno village, the culture and life of the Saami and Komi-Izhma people, the indigenous peoples of the Kola North, will be demonstrated.

To further increase the number of guests, the regional government is carrying out systematic work to develop infrastructure and introduce new channels for promoting tourism and recreational potential in the domestic and foreign markets. So, quite recently, the international conference "Horizons of the Arctic" was held with the participation of tour operators from the countries of the Asia-Pacific region, showing the greatest interest in the Murmansk region. The regional government, together with representatives of the tourism community, is carrying out a set of measures to introduce the "China Friendly" standard, which is focused on the peculiarities of the mentality of Asian tourists.

In Murmansk in 2021, the opening of the tourist information center (TIC) of the Murmansk region took place. The main goal of creating the institution was to unite several disparate city and departmental tourist information centers into a single network. The united regional TIC will work not just as an information desk, but as a marketing center to promote information about the northern region, about its life and development. It is expected that it will become a tool for promoting the Murmansk region as a tourist destination not only within the country, but also abroad. In the near future, it is planned to create several regional TIC offices in the most attractive remote municipalities of the Murmansk region. At the moment, there are several routes in the Murmansk region that offer tourists various tourist products. For example, people are offered a gastronomic brand tour "Taste of the Arctic", in which tourists travel for three days to Murmansk, Teriberka and Lovozero, tasting local arctic dishes from venison, fresh fish and cloudberries. Arctic cuisine is an additional brand that can attract tourists with the help of old Pomor and Sami recipes. There are also large constructor routes in which the tourist himself chooses "points of attraction", based on preparedness and the amount of free time. There are four potential growth points that contribute to the development of tourism and can increase the flow of tourists to the region: water, winter, industrial and pilgrimage types of tourism. The Kola North is perceived as a region where you can ski, snowmobile and watch the northern lights longer than other places. Snowkiting is also promising,

In 2019, a new association appeared in the region - the Union of the Tourism Industry of the Murmansk Region, which united the interests of regional travel agencies and raised tourism ideas to a new level, as well as provided additional funding that will be used to develop tourism in the Arctic. Given the gigantic tourism potential of the Murmansk region, it is necessary to improve the quality of service. One of the key tasks is to establish a professional service standard that satisfies the needs of tourists. The system of grant support for local tour operators will be developed. There are also plans to direct the federal government to secure sites for legal crab fishing in the Barents Sea starting in 2021, another potential growth point for the tourism industry. To organize communication between all participants in the tourism business and ensure the maximum multiplier effect for the entire economy of the region from tourism, a cluster approach was chosen when creating conditions for the development of this area in the Murmansk region. The functioning of the tourism cluster on the territory of the region makes it possible to increase the efficiency of using its tourism and recreational potential.

It is obvious that the integration of areas and activities into a regional tourism cluster makes it possible to achieve a synergistic effect in the industry and ensure an increase in the region's GDP. The emphasis is on the formation of four main tourist clusters - Khibiny, Belomorje, Lovozero and Pechenga. Today, spontaneous proto-clusters "Murmansk" and "Teriberka" are added to them.

Each cluster is developing or has already developed its own recognizable brand. All of them should be united under a common, so-called umbrella brand of the Murmansk region, which will be promoted on the Russian and international markets. Branded tourist routes will be created in the region, new types of tourism products will be developed, such as business and industrial tourism. The list of pilot enterprises that could potentially become flagships for the development of industrial tourism in the Murmansk region was formed by the regional tourism committee. This list includes such companies as PhosAgro (Kirov branch of JSC Apatit), PJSC Norilsk Nickel (Kola MMC), Kola NPP, EuroChem (Kovdorsky GOK) and JSC Olkon.

In the future, the promotion of the Murmansk region as a tourist destination to new markets: to Europe (Germany, Spain, France), Japan, Latin America and the USA. The target indicator calculated for today is to bring the tourist flow to the region by 2025 to 557.4 thousand people a year.

There are single-industry towns in the Murmansk region, for which tourism, due to the restructuring process, may soon become the main factor in the development and diversification of the local economy.

*Kirovsk.* In recent years, the flow of tourists to Kirovsk and Khibiny has increased by 50% due to the

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

modernization of tourist and sports infrastructure (Figure 5).



**Figure 5. Kirovsk**

The impetus for the development of tourism and the departure from mono-dependence is given by the assignment of the status of a territory of advanced socio-economic development (TOSED) to single-industry towns. Taking into account the fact that TASED projects are mainly aimed at the development of tourism, it is expected to double the tourist flow to Kirovsk and create about five hundred new jobs. The Kirov "Snow Village" is the most popular object of display in the Murmansk region, it is listed in the Guinness Book of Records as the largest snow structure in Russia. Further development of the infrastructure of the ski resort (for example, the construction of a panoramic restaurant on the top of the mountain, the launch of the Khibiny National Park and the modernization of the Khibiny Airport) will increase the tourist attractiveness of the facility and increase the tourist flow to the Kirov region up to 120 thousand people a year.

*Kovdor.* In the single-industry city of Kovdor, the second city in the region, which received the status of TASED in 2019, a new investment tourism project has been launched under the brand "Kovdor – the Capital of Hyperborea". The innovative project involves the creation of a Hyperborean tourist cluster based on the development of scientific expeditionary and geological and mineralogical tourism, the organization of a museum park, infrastructure

facilities, and walking routes to the artifacts of ancient Hyperborea.

In addition, by 2022, it is planned to open a new international checkpoint on the border with Finland, Kovdor-Savukoski, which will make it possible to overcome the "dead-end" transport situation in Kovdor, shorten the route from the neighboring country to other cities in the Arctic and increase the flow of tourists not only to the Kovdor region, but and in general to the Murmansk region. The status of TASED will allow attracting investors to the city, as well as reduce the level of social tension. Thanks to the new status, the checkpoint and the project, two hundred new jobs will appear in the Kovdorsky district in the field of tourism, services, small and medium-sized businesses.

The project "Kovdor - the capital of Hyperborea" won 1st place in the second International Marketing Competition "PRObrand - 2020" in the nomination "Territory Branding". This is another serious step towards the development of inbound tourism in the Kovdor region, tourism infrastructure and small business, as well as cross-border cooperation between Russia and Finland. In addition, this is another weighty argument in resolving the issue of building a border crossing in Kovdor and establishing a direct road connection with Finland. The victory in the PRObrand 2020 competition gives Kovdor the right to

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

enter the collection of the best world tourism practices with experience in creating and promoting the brand "Kovdor is the capital of Hyperborea". Unfortunately, in 2020, due to the pandemic, Kovdor was closed to tourists.

*Pechenga district* plays an important role in the economy of the region as an industrial center, it is also important due to its border location and rich history, which must be used for the development of tourism here. Ecotourism, sparsely populated areas and industrial tourism are the main areas for the Pechenga region. One of the objects of industrial tourism can be the Kola super-deep well. The complex is planned to be restored, including with the involvement of money from the federal budget, and made a tourist site of international importance.

It is also planned to make the port of Liinakhamari a new point of tourist attraction, which will receive cruise ships and yachts. At the same time, foreigners will have the opportunity to spend up to 72 hours in the Pechenga region without a visa. The increased tourist flow will also require new accommodations. It is assumed that several basic tourist camps and eco-hotels with complete infrastructure will appear in the Pechenga region. It is already known that this will be a large-scale investment project with high-quality infrastructure, jobs will be created in the territory where Norilsk Nickel operates.

The project is scheduled to enter the implementation phase in 2025.

A tourist village with 900 rooms will be built in Liinakhamari with souvenir shops, restaurants and cafes, a yacht club with a well-equipped harbor, a ski resort with cable cars, a sea station with an embankment, and an aquatic center. 12 billion rubles will be invested in the federal project.

Excursions to the industrial facilities of the Pechenga region, nature trails will be organized, opportunities for diving and fishing will be expanded. The modernized Korzunovo airport will be able to receive tourists. By 2022, it is planned to simplify the regime of short-term stay of foreign citizens. The creation of communal, transport and tourism infrastructures will annually attract 300,000 tourists to the Pechenga region and an additional 40 billion rubles to the region's economy, as well as create five hundred new jobs.

The Murmansk region participates in two priority areas of the new federal target program for the development of tourism for the period from 2019 to 2025. - "Silver Necklace of Russia" and "Russian Arctic". As part of the creation of an investment project for the Belomorye tourist and recreational cluster in the south of the Murmansk region, it is planned to build an all-season sports and tourist complex.

In order to fully implement all plans for the development of tourism, large-scale modernization

and construction of tourism and transport infrastructures are necessary. The lack of infrastructure facilities and their significant deterioration are the main obstacles to the development of tourism in the region. Unorganized tourism is also a cause for concern (primarily on the spawning salmon rivers of the Terek region).

The national project "Ecology" provides for the organization of a new national park "Tersky Bereg", the main goal of which is to save and preserve the salmon river Varzuga, in which the number of wild salmon has sharply decreased due to poachers and rafting of unorganized water tourists. The creation of a new reserve in the Tersky district will allow: maintaining the biosphere balance, regulating the tourist flow, preventing "wild" tourism, as well as preserving the Pomor way of life and the traditional nature management of local residents.

A new impetus to the development of ecological tourism will be given by the status of the first national park in the region assigned to the Khibiny in 2018. In 2019, it was transferred under the management of the Federal State Budgetary Institution "Laplandsky Reserve". The Khibiny National Park is a future strategic landmark for attracting tourists to the region. Now the biggest problem is the issue of funding from the federal budget, since this is a territory of federal significance.

The eco-tourism project "Khibiny for All" in 2020 was among the winners of the first stage of the competition of the Agency for Strategic Initiatives, aimed at creating tourist and recreational clusters and developing ecotourism in Russia. Currently, work is underway on the creation of a master plan, which will outline the development of the Khibiny as a tourist cluster with an emphasis on increasing transport and investment attractiveness, and developing tourist infrastructure.

The main objective of the project is to create a support system for small entrepreneurs working in the field of ecological tourism and souvenir production in the territory of the Khibiny National Park and in the nearest settlements. Within the framework of the project, the School of Arctic guides for the protected areas of the Murmansk region is being created. Promising tourist walking routes will be developed, including those that will become educational for guides. So, for example, one of the routes is an excursion to the former molybdenum mine on the slope of Mount Takhtarvumchorr.

It is necessary that the Khibiny territory receive additional sustainable development, a new incentive. It is very important that emphasis is placed on diversifying the seasonality of tourism in the Khibiny so that summer offers can be developed. This will help ensure that the Khibiny cluster has significant weight on a national scale. The organizers of the project expect to attract more than 1 billion rubles of investments to the territory of the cluster by 2025,

## Impact Factor:

<b>SIRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>PIHIQ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

increase the tourist flow two to three times, create about a hundred jobs, give growth to small and medium-sized businesses, ensure tax revenues to the budgets of all levels in the amount of 4, 5 million rubles. The key idea of the project is that the Khibiny are home mountains within walking distance, which should become a school for all types of mountain tourism. The work will focus on determining the permissible environmental anthropogenic loads, especially when conducting tourism activities, and on the development of recommendations to minimize damage to nature and local communities. Local residents will be able to visit the territory of the Khibiny National Park free of charge; zones will be allocated for picking mushrooms and berries.

One of the key problems of tourism development is the state of the road transport network and the active work of illegal guides. During the formation of projects, the issue of improving the road infrastructure is being worked out, which makes it possible to ensure a stable connection of remote areas with the federal highway R-21. It should also be noted that the predominant Chinese tourist groups in the region often cater to visiting Chinese guides without Russian licenses, which force local guides out of the market. The region lacks official professional guides for ecological tours. In the northern regions of Russia, there is practically no basic school for training such specialists, unlike the neighboring countries of Northern Europe.

In the Murmansk region, it is also necessary to solve the following urgent problems: uncontrolled "wild" tourism, pollution of unique natural areas. The problem of accumulation and removal of garbage is acute in the natural park on the Rybachy and Sredny peninsulas. The introduction of a tourist tax in the amount of 500 rubles can solve the problem. from the car at the entrance to the park. With the funds received, it is possible to organize garbage collection, pave roads and ecological trails for tourists.

Sports recreational fishing is one of the main tourist brands of the Murmansk region. In mid-May, the seven-season season begins on the southern rivers Varzuga, Pan and Kitsa. Many years ago, on the banks of these rivers, the organizer of the international tourism business, the Vskhody Kommunizma collective farm, set up fishing camps. About a thousand wealthy tourists come here to fish every year. The collective farm works with agencies around the world. Their clients are tourists from the UK, France and Spain, i.e. from countries in which there was a difficult epidemiological situation in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. The consequence of this was the disruption of the spring fishing tourist season in 2020. In this regard, the organizer refocused on Russian clients.

Packages of services provided to domestic and foreign fishing tourists differ. Foreigners fly by helicopters, Russians drive their own vehicles.

Foreigners have different preferences in choosing fishing destinations, they choose recreational fishing on a catch-and-release basis. Russian tourists use the principle of "caught - seized". In the absence of foreign tourists, the tour operator, the Vskhody Kommunizma collective farm, incurs losses in organizing helicopter tours, since one hour of renting a helicopter costs 200 thousand rubles, and fuel is usually imported for a monthly fishing trip with daily departures of five hours.

The main strategic task in the development of polar tourism is to preserve nature, ensure the safety of tourists and, at the same time, achieve a significant economic effect for municipalities and the region. With the development of tourism, it will also be possible to partially solve the acute problem of the migration outflow of the population from the region. Development of ecological tourism based on the creation of ecological trails and hiking routes in the Kola North.

The priority type of tourism in the Murmansk region is ecological (ecotourism). It is advisable to develop it in protected areas in order to regulate and account for the flow of tourists. Protected areas are increasingly involved in the tourism activities of the Arctic. Of their main types, national (federal) and natural (regional) parks are specially created for the development of ecological tourism. In natural reserves, as a rule, any economic activity is prohibited and recreation is severely limited, since the main task of the protected area is the protection of natural complexes. Insufficient funding of federal reserves often leads to the search for additional sources of income. One such "means of survival", for example for the Lapland Biosphere Reserve, is the development of regulated, organized eco-tourism.

One of the main components of the development of ecotourism in protected areas is the creation of ecological trails (eco trails). They play an important role in regulating the allowable loads on protected natural areas. The main idea of the eco-trail is, first of all, in the ecological education and education of those who visit protected natural areas, in the protection of nature, as well as in the transfer of the flow of visitors to relatively safe directions for nature.

Traditionally, eco trails are laid in the recreational areas of national and natural parks, nature reserves, nature reserves, as well as in unprotected areas: in urban forest parks, suburban recreation areas, etc. To create a system of ecological trails, three main criteria must be observed: attractiveness, accessibility, information content. Ecological trails equipped in accordance with all safety rules, as a rule, do not have a negative anthropogenic impact on natural landscapes. To make it interesting and exciting for the tourist, for each object found, he will be awarded points, which at the end will be summed up and a prize will be issued based on its results (for example, an electronic discount certificate from a partner

## Impact Factor:

**ISRA (India) = 6.317**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.771**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

company). In this case, the user receives a specialized card with useful information about the object. At the end of the route, the total result based on the points received will be displayed. As a reward for completing a quest in the bot, it will be possible to provide customers with special vouchers from partner organizations. To receive a reward, you will need to contact the administrator. The prize is given out once a month.

At present, in different parts of the Murmansk region, 18 ecological trails. Nine of them are laid in protected areas, most of all (five paths) in the Lapland Reserve. Five eco trails are organized on the territory of settlements. In Murmansk, in 2019, the first eco-educational walking route was opened around Semenovskoye Lake with a length of five kilometers. For environmental education, activists installed signs and stands along the path of the eco-trail with information about local natural and landscape attractions and the need to respect nature. In the area of Semenovskoye Lake, you can see several natural zones at once: tundra, forest tundra, swamps.

In one of the most inaccessible reserves for tourists in Russia, located entirely in the border zone, the Pasvik Nature Reserve, a walking excursion route has been equipped. The ecological path leads to Varlaam Island, to the house-museum of the Norwegian ornithologist Hans Skonning. With the help of volunteers from the Kola MMC, the house-museum was reconstructed, an eco-trail was equipped with the construction of an ornithological observation tower. Pasvik is a true open-air museum of nature, where the northernmost indigenous pine forests in Europe have been preserved. In the future, it is possible to implement the idea of creating an international ecological trail passing through the territory of the trilateral Pasvik-Inari National Park (located on the border of three countries - Russia, Norway and Finland), which has received a Euro park certificate.

During the festival "Teriberka. New Life" in the vicinity of the Arctic Pomor village of Teriberka, an ecological trail was organized that leads to a bird colony on the shores of the Barents Sea. The trail introduces the unique ecosystem of the Arctic tundra. Its further arrangement is necessary with the ordering of the arrangement of information stands installed on the route rather haphazardly, and the imposition of wooden decks across the swampy area. The most famous equipped ecological trails of the Kola North are laid in the Lapland Reserve. Over the past two years, there have been more hiking trails on which environmental education tours are conducted. New show objects have appeared: the visitor center, the TIC and Father Frost's tower.

Among the most popular routes are the eco-trail to the old manor along the lake, the trail to Mount Yelnyun, the educational trail "Forest Pomuchochka", the hiking route to the observation deck over the

Yelyavruai stream. A new 3.5-kilometer trail, equipped in 2019, was laid along the banks of the Chunozero and leads to the place where the first cordon of the Lapland Reserve was located in 1930, where its history began. There are wooden decks on the trail, ascents and descents, places for rest and observation platforms are equipped, information stands and dry closets are installed. It is important that the eco-trail has become more accessible for people with disabilities. On the way, travelers get information about the peculiarities of the northern nature, the change of vegetation zones, and the habits of animals.

Norilsk Nickel actively participated in the creation of eco-trails in two areas:

corporate volunteering;

World of New Opportunities program.

The Kola MMC allocated about 5 million rubles of the won grant for the creation of walking routes. The key event of the eco-marathon was an ecological rally, as a result of which volunteers helped equip an observation deck and installed twenty information boards along the eco-trails. The main goals of the project are environmental education and increasing the culture of attitude towards nature. The innovative project "Information trail "Forest Pomuchochka"" is a part of this program: sculptures of animals, birds, small architectural forms and information boards appeared on the interactive route. In the future, several more sculptures will be installed, lighting of the trail is planned, and the creation of the Baba Yaga Laboratory and the Well of Knowledge is in the process of completion. The ecological trail "Nizhnyaya Chuna - Chunozerskaya estate" with a length of five kilometers starts from the cordon of the Nizhnyaya Chuna TIC (official entrance to the reserve) on the federal highway "Kola" (1221 km) and leads to the Chunozerskaya estate of the reserve, where two historical museums are located and visit center. Along the route of the marked trail, you can visit the Sami churchyard "Siit", an arboretum, parking lots, viewing platforms, a place for bird watching "Capercaillie Hill".

The route "Climbing Mount Yelnyun II" with a height of 590 meters and a length of about three kilometers was laid back in the 1930s. and is very popular in summer. For the convenience of visitors in winter, the reserve has purchased special equipment - snowshoes. This route is interesting because when climbing the mountain, you can clearly observe the altitudinal change of vegetation belts - taiga, forest tundra and tundra. From the top of the mountain there is a panoramic view of Chuno Lake.

Currently, about 5 thousand tourists a year visit the territory of the Lapland Reserve in different seasons, work will continue to expand and improve the infrastructure. In the near future, it is planned to increase the length of equipped trails and open a new exhibition dedicated to the Sami people. Volunteers, many of whom live in Monchegorsk and work at the



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Kola MMC, traditionally help to equip the nature reserve. In 2020, the creation of the Lapland Round the World ring route from the old estate of the reserve with an ascent to Mount Elnyun I, with a transition to Mount Elnyun II and a descent to the Chunozero estate (starting point) was started. The length of the route will be 14 kilometers. In addition, it is planned to build a new term of Santa Claus, and forest houses for tourists will be built on the southern border of the reserve over time. It is planned to create viewing platforms, equip the recreational and educational complexes "Deer House" and "Chum", the construction of a rope park. The concept also includes the renewal of the historical route "Tyan-Shansky - Kreps" and the creation of a new tourist hiking route from the Chunozero estate and a water route from the reserve to the Khibiny National Park, which is managed by the Lapland Reserve. The issue of financing the project is yet to be resolved. The reserve hopes that they will be able to attract grants and receive support from industrial enterprises in the region. It is also necessary to solve the problem of transport accessibility. Currently, the Lapland Nature Reserve can only be reached by car. Bus excursions are carried out only from the nearest cities - Apatity, Polyarnye Zori, Monchegorsk. It seems expedient to organize one-day public bus tours from Murmansk.

In one of the northernmost botanical gardens in the world, the Polar Alpine Botanical Garden (PABSI), two ecological trails have been created to get acquainted with the local flora. The oldest ecological trail of the Kola Peninsula was laid in the mid-1930s. and is called the "Path of geographers." This educational walking route is located on the

northeastern slope of Vudyavrchorr mountain. It provides an opportunity to introduce tourists to representatives of the three altitudinal vegetation belts of the Khibiny Mountains. The ecological trail, which rises almost to the top of Mount Vudyavrchorr, runs from a mixed taiga forest, through a birch crooked forest to the bald arctic deserts on a flat top, from where you can see the beautiful panoramas of the Khibiny. Along the way, tourists get acquainted with the unique plants of the Kola North.

In the nature reserve "Seydyavr" in 2016, volunteers from different regions of Russia laid a two-kilometer ecological trail in the Seydozero area with tourist information navigation and places for recreation, and in 2017 an eco-trail for people with disabilities was equipped here. In this remote area of the Lovozero tundra, there is a hiking route popular among amateur travelers and it is constantly being improved.

Hiking enthusiasts in the Kandalaksha region can choose four diverse eco-trails: two ecological and local history trails - "Kandalaksha Shore" and "Kolvitsa", a mountain trail to the top of Volosyanaya Mountain and the city health trail. The three-kilometer walking route "Kandalaksha Shore" is popular among locals and tourists. The trail was equipped in 2021, equipped with signs and signs describing sights. The route starts at Monastyrsky Navolok, within the city, runs along the Kandalaksha Bay along the upper path of the Baryn rock and ends in the picturesque Pitkul Bay (Figure 6). Here, on the peninsula, a monument of archeology has been preserved - a stone labyrinth.



Figure 6. Kandalaksha Bay of the White Sea

In the village of Kolvitsa (28 kilometers from the city of Kandalaksha), an eco-trail to the Kolvitsa waterfalls, 2 kilometers long, is equipped for tourists. The trail starts from the bridge, then goes along the pine forest along the left bank of the Kolvitsa River to the Black Padun waterfall. On the trail there are signs with information about natural objects, steps are equipped on the slopes.

On Mount Volosyanoy there is an ancient temple, which is the largest accumulation of Saami

sacred stones - seids. There are more than two hundred of them in the Kandalaksha region. The trail starts from the snow park, three kilometers from the city, has a length of almost five kilometers, runs along the slope of Mount Volosyanaya, to its very top, from where a panorama of the bay, the city and the surroundings opens. The height of the mountain is 475 m above sea level. In the middle of the route in 2018, an innovative tourist shelter was built - DublDom with all amenities and a panoramic window, and it is constantly being

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia)</b>	<b>= 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

improved. The trail is also used as a downhill mountain bike trail. Cyclists equipped the route with wooden footbridges and ski jumps, which made it popular.

The city's "health path" starts from the suspension bridge near the "Spolohi" hotel, passes through a pine forest along the left bank of the Niva River, upstream. It is a walking path-terrenkur, equipped with places for rest - benches and gazebos. Information boards and signs, wooden sculptures and sports grounds are installed on the trail. The highlight of the trail is squirrels, which can often be found. In 2014, in the Tersky district, a project was implemented to equip the ecological and local history trail "Ancient Pomeranian village Umba" with a length of 5.5 kilometers (Figure 6). The project became the winner of the all-Russian competition of projects "Cultural Mosaic of Small Towns and Villages", organized by the Elena and Gennady Timchenko Charitable Foundation in the nomination "Space of Life" and received a grant for the implementation of the idea. Along the entire walking

route, local volunteers and young ecologists installed information boards telling about the history of the Pomor settlement, traditional crafts, flora and fauna of the Tersky coast. Parking lots for tourists with an observation deck were also equipped. From 3 to 4 thousand tourists pass along the trail every year.

In the Tersky district, they also plan to equip a walking route to petroglyphs on the islands of Lake Kanozero. The Kanozero petroglyphs are located in one of the most inaccessible places in the Kola North; now you can get to them only by boat or all-terrain vehicle. The project of the open-air museum "Petroglyphs of Kanozero" - "Walking to the Stone Age" became the winner of the grant competition "Museums of the Russian North". The funds received will be used to find an investor and build an ecological trail 18–20 kilometers long from the Umba-Kandalaksha highway to the cordon on the western shore of Lake Kanozero. The trail is already available for cyclists, information boards, signs and places for rest have been installed along the route.



Figure 7. Kolvitsky waterfall

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>



**Figure 8. Kolvitsa River**



**Figure 9. Old Umba**

In 2019, in the city of Polyarnye Zori, in the main recreational area of the city, the national park "Our Park", with the support of the Kola NPP and the Lapland Reserve, an ecological trail was built on the shore of Lake Pinozero. In Kovdor, in the area of the Vars ski complex, on Mount Lysaya, in 2021, the arrangement of an eco-trail 5 kilometers long was completed as part of the project "Kovdor - the Capital

of Hyperborea". The pedestrian ecological route "In the footsteps of the snowy owl" passes through canyons, lakes and seids and is equipped by local enthusiasts without the use of budgetary funds. Eco trail in 2023 will be equipped with navigation and information stands.

At the moment, a three-kilometer ecological trail is being built in the city of Apatity, from the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Belorechensky microdistrict to the Vorobina ski hill. An observation deck overlooking the city will be built on the slope of the hill. The trail can be covered with snowshoes in winter.

In the near future, it is planned to equip pedestrian tourist routes in the created protected areas: the Khibiny National Park and the nature park on the Sredny and Rybachy peninsulas (in 2021, the concept of a modern route and navigation system with a mobile visitor center will be implemented). The number of information stands, full houses, bonfires, places for garbage collection will increase in order to ensure a comfortable stay of tourists in protected areas. It is also planned to organize an ecological trail around Lake Rogozero (the city of Murmansk).

An innovative direction in the development of ecological tourism in the Kola North can be the organization of a national hiking trail. National trails are systems of amateur tourism routes that are equipped with the necessary infrastructure. We can offer to organize such a trail on the territory of the Khibiny and Lovozero tundra with a visit to the sacred lake of the Sami, Seydozero, which is especially popular among tourists, on the shore of which there is a rock with the image of the giant Kuyva. The national walking trail should be long, equipped, publicly accessible to all segments of the population and free to visit. The trail should be laid by experienced tourists and volunteers along dirt paths with entry to the most beautiful and interesting places in the region.

Director of the Lapland Reserve Sergey Shestakov proposes to revive one of the oldest ecological routes in Russia and the world - the Lapland trail from Kandalaksha to Kola. The main route is set. It can be partly overcome on foot, partly by boat, for example, from Zasheyk to Olenegorsk, or rafting along the Kola from the former portage, from Lake Pivnus, where the watershed of the White and Barents Seas passes, and where possible, move by car or off-road equipment. You can make radial exits from it: to the Tersky coast, to the Khibiny National Park, the Lapland Reserve, Murmansk, Teriberka and the Pechenga region. Sergey Shestakov believes: "The development of a strategy or program for the development of tourism in the region based on this trail would unite tour operators. At the same time, it is possible to lay investments not only for travel companies,

The idea of a unifying strategic landmark to attract tourists to the region is not new. Currently, work is underway to create an ecological trail "The Lomonosov Way", which is supposed to pass through the territory of six constituent entities of the Russian Federation (Moscow, Moscow, Yaroslavl, Vologda, Arkhangelsk regions and the Republic of Karelia).

The implementation of the Strategy is carried out by developing a plan for its implementation and state programs of the Murmansk region, ensuring the solution of problems and the achievement of the

strategic goal of the socio-economic development of the region.

The state programs of the Murmansk region are being developed in the relevant areas of the socio-economic development of the region. According to subparagraph 2 of Article 37 of the Federal Law "On Strategic Planning in the Russian Federation" and subparagraph 2 of Article 18 of the Law of the Murmansk Region "On Strategic Planning in the Murmansk Region", the list of state programs of the Murmansk Region is approved by the Government of the Murmansk Region.

At the end of 2020, 99% of the regional budget funds were distributed according to the program principle, in addition to which the implementation of the Strategy requires the attraction of financial resources from the federal budget, which implies active interaction between the executive authorities of the Murmansk region and federal executive authorities on the participation of the region in the implementation of state programs Russian Federation, federal targeted programs, federal targeted investment program, national and federal projects, as well as funds from local budgets.

The volume of financial resources (budgetary funds) required for the implementation of the second stage of the implementation of the Strategy is estimated (taking into account the budget forecast of the Murmansk region for the long-term period until 2035) at the level of at least 786.2 billion rubles.

The most important financial resource for the implementation of the Strategy is extra-budgetary funds attracted on the principles of public-private partnership (including in the social sphere and the sphere of housing and communal services), as well as within the framework of the implementation of international agreements and programs of international cross-border cooperation.

In order to stimulate the implementation of investment plans of companies, it is planned to provide state support for investment activities provided for by regional legislation, assist investors in creating the necessary energy, engineering, and transport infrastructure, as well as in staffing ongoing (planned for implementation) projects.

As part of this work, the implementation of the regional Staffing Standard for Industrial Growth will also be continued, one of the elements of which is the formation and updating of a long-term forecast for the staffing needs of the economy and social sphere of the Murmansk region. According to this forecast, the annual additional need for personnel ranges from 34.2 thousand people in 2024 to more than 30 thousand people in the medium term. This forecast will be used in determining the total volume of enrollment targets in educational organizations.

The implementation of projects for the economic development of the territory of the region, the increase in investment activity in the region and the solution of

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

the tasks set in the Strategy will be facilitated by the adoption at the federal level of measures of state support for the socio-economic development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, due to the specifics of economic management and life in this macro-region, as well as the national interests of Russia in the Arctic.

In this regard, the active participation of the state authorities of the region in the improvement of the regulatory legal framework governing legal relations in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation is

envisaged. Ensuring the consistency, balance and interconnection of strategic planning documents at the regional level, the consistency of long-term goals and objectives of municipal management with the priorities and goals of the socio-economic development of the region will contribute to increasing the efficiency of the activities of participants in strategic planning in solving problems and achieving the strategic goal.

## References:

1. (2021). *National tourism portal. Regions of Russia. News*. Retrieved 20.01.2021 from <https://russia.travel/>
2. (2021). *Arctic tourism in Russia* / otv. editor Yu. F. Lukin; comp. tourist guide for the regions of N. K. Kharlampiev; Sev. (Arctic) feder. un-t; St. Petersburg. state un-t. (p.96). Arkhangelsk: NArFU.
3. Lukin, Yu. F. (2021). Arctic tourism: rating of regions, opportunities and threats. *Arktika i Sever*. 2021 No. 23, pp.116-122.
4. (2023). *Expert: in the Arctic, it is necessary to create mini-tour clusters within the framework of protected areas*. Retrieved 07/10/2023 from <https://tass.ru/ekonomika/6316401>
5. Bertosh, A. A. (2019). Arctic tourism: conceptual features and features. *Proceedings of the Kola Scientific Center of the Russian Academy of Sciences*. 2019. V. 10, No. 7-17, pp. 169-180.
6. Leonidova, E. G. (2018). *Development of tourism in the regions of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation. North and the Arctic in the new paradigm of world development. Luzin Readings - 2016: Materials of the VIII Intern. scientific-practical. conf. (Apatity, April 14-16, 2016)*. Apatity: IEP KSC RAS, 2018, pp. 206-211.
7. (2023). *How to tame any tourist in the Arctic*. Retrieved 07/09/2023 from <https://nordnews.ru/news/2019/09/05/?newsid=115305>
8. Khotenov, A. V. (2023). *500 places of the Russian North that you need to see*. (pp.3-4). Moscow: Martin.
9. (2002). *Karelia: epic tourism program "Kalevala": Sat. report and theses. message intl. scientific-practical. conf. (Republic of Karelia)*. (pp.59-86). Petrozavodsk, November 20-21, 2002). Moscow: RIB "Tourist".
10. (2023). *Official Internet portal of the Republic of Karelia. News // Tourism*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <http://gov.karelia.ru/news/?tags=15>
11. (2023). *Investment portal of the Republic of Karelia. Tourism*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <http://kareliainvest.ru/republicforinvestors/projects/turizm/>
12. (2023). *Unified tourist passport of the Republic of Karelia*. Retrieved 07/18/2023 from <https://ar.investinrussia.com/data/image/regions/unif-turpass2016.pdf>
13. (2023). *Karelia: Tourist portal. Kinerma*. Retrieved 07/10/2023 from <http://www.ticrk.ru/regions/region/settlement/?PID=7515&ID=8172>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2023 Issue: 07 Volume: 123

Published: 21.07.2023 <http://T-Science.org>

Issue

Article



**Aleksei Vasilevich Shevchenko**

National Academy of Sciences of the Kyrgyz Republic  
Doctoral student, Candidate of Legal Sciences  
Bishkek, Kyrgyz Republic  
[alexis.sanchez.82@mail.ru](mailto:alexis.sanchez.82@mail.ru)

**Tair Mamayunusovich Dzhorobekov**

Osh State University  
Candidate of Legal Sciences, Kyrgyz Republic

**Almagul Mukhtarbekovna Kokoeva**

Kyrgyz-Uzbek International University  
Doctor of Law, Kyrgyz Republic

## NEGATIVE CONSEQUENCES OF INVESTIGATIVE AND PROCEDURAL ERRORS

**Abstract:** The article states that mistakes in criminal proceedings can be made by all participants in the process. Investigative errors can become a serious obstacle to ensuring justice and protecting citizens' rights and affect criminal proceedings. It is noted that high-quality, proper and lawful conduct of investigative actions, as well as respect for the rights and legitimate interests of all parties are important for effective criminal proceedings.

**Key words:** Criminal proceedings, investigative errors, procedural error, judicial error.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Shevchenko, A. V., Dzhorobekov, T. M., & Kokoeva, A. M. (2023). Negative consequences of investigative and procedural errors. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 07 (123), 189-192.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-07-123-24> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2023.07.123.24>

**Scopus ASCC:** 3308.

### НЕГАТИВНЫЕ ПОСЛЕДСТВИЯ СЛЕДСТВЕННЫХ И ПРОЦЕССУАЛЬНЫХ ОШИБОК

**Аннотация:** В статье указывается, что ошибки в уголовном судопроизводстве могут быть допущены всеми участниками процесса. Следственные ошибки могут стать серьезным препятствием для обеспечения справедливости и защиты прав граждан и повлиять на уголовное судопроизводство. Отмечается, что качественное, надлежащее и законное проведение следственных действий, а также соблюдение прав и законных интересов всех сторон важны для эффективного уголовного судопроизводства.

**Ключевые слова:** Уголовное судопроизводство, следственные ошибки, процессуальная ошибка, судебная ошибка.

#### Введение

В уголовном судопроизводстве существует разделение ролей и обязанностей между судом, следователем, прокурором и адвокатом. Суд не собирает доказательства самостоятельно, а основывается на предоставленных сторонами материалах дела [1].

Следователь и прокурор являются основными участниками, собирающими и

представляющими доказательства в судебном процессе. Они исследуют улики, собирают показания свидетелей, проводят экспертизы и представляют полученные доказательства перед судом. В свою очередь, адвокаты, как представители стороны защиты, также могут представлять свои доказательства и аргументы [2].

Ошибки в уголовном судопроизводстве могут быть допущены всеми участниками

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

процесса. Например, суд может совершить ошибку в оценке доказательств или применении закона. Государственный обвинитель, следователь или адвокат могут допустить ошибки в процессе сбора и представления доказательств, аргументации или пропускать релевантную информацию.

Ошибки могут иметь серьезные последствия и повлиять на вынесение приговора [3, с.57-59]. В случае обнаружения существенных ошибок, которые могут привести к незаконному или несправедливому приговору, сторона, которая считает себя пострадавшей от такой ошибки, может подать апелляцию или обжалование. Возможность исправления ошибок является важной составляющей справедливости судебного процесса [4].

В целом, цель судебного разбирательства уголовного дела состоит в том, чтобы обеспечить справедливость и правильное применение закона [5, с.206-209]. Ошибки, хотя и допускаются, должны быть минимальными, а их исправление осуществляется через апелляционные и кассационные процедуры, позволяющие контролировать законность и обоснованность судебных решений. Действительно, в уголовно-процессуальном законодательстве предусмотрены механизмы, направленные на предупреждение и устранение следственных ошибок. Однако, несмотря на это, ошибки все же могут возникать [6].

Ошибки в уголовном процессе могут проявляться в различных формах, таких как неверные мысли, действия или бездействия, неточности или погрешности. Они могут быть результатом слабой теоретической подготовки, физического или психологического состояния судьи, следователя или адвоката, неудовлетворительной подготовки для конкретной ситуации или неправильной организации работы. Также эффективность работы начальника следственного органа, прокурора и суда может оказывать влияние на возникновение ошибок. Несовершенство закона также усложняет обнаружение и исправление следственных ошибок.

По мнению отдельных ученых, следственные ошибки включают в себя любые непреднамеренные нарушения закона, недостатки и упущения, совершаемые при возбуждении уголовных дел и в ходе процессуальной деятельности. Они могут проявляться в мыслительном процессе компетентных лиц, которые имеют соответствующие права и обязанности [7, с.13-14].

Для минимизации возникновения следственных ошибок и их последствий важно продолжать совершенствовать систему уголовно-процессуального правосудия, улучшать

образование и подготовку судей, следователей, адвокатов и других участников уголовного процесса [8, с.271-275]. Также необходимо уделять внимание эффективной организации работы в соответствующих органах, а также рассмотрению возможных изменений в законодательстве, чтобы облегчить выявление и исправление следственных ошибок

Понятие следственной ошибки может включать широкий спектр незаконных или необоснованных действий или бездействий, которые могут происходить в ходе следственной деятельности. Это могут быть как грубые нарушения процессуальных норм, которые совершаются осознанно, так и неправильное применение уголовного закона, которое может быть выявлено и подтверждено соответствующими должностными лицами или органами.

Упомянутые признаки ошибки, такие как незаконность и необоснованность решения, представляют важность, поскольку они позволяют различать ошибки по их образованию и установить способ их исправления. Незаконность указывает на нарушение законных норм и требований, в то время как необоснованность означает, что принятое решение не имеет достаточной правовой или фактической основы.

Такое разграничение помогает определить характер ошибки и применить соответствующие меры для ее исправления. Например, если ошибка следственного характера является результатом незаконного действия или бездействия, может потребоваться рассмотрение возможности привлечения ответственности соответствующих лиц. Если же ошибка связана с неправильным применением уголовного закона, может потребоваться пересмотр и переоценка принятого решения на основе правильной трактовки закона.

Следственная ошибка может оказывать серьезное влияние на достижение целей и задач в уголовном судопроизводстве, а также на выяснение истины [9]. Если следователь допускает ошибку и обвинение разваливается в суде, это может привести к возможности переквалификации действий подсудимого на менее тяжкие. Однако, это не всегда гарантирует справедливый и точный результат, ибо переквалификация может происходить по различным причинам, включая добросовестное заблуждение следователя.

В подобных ситуациях также используется понятие процессуальная ошибка на предварительном следствии, которая означает непреднамеренное нарушение процессуального закона, которое заключается в невыполнении или ненадлежащем выполнении требований закона со стороны следователя или другого органа, и которое признается таковым компетентным

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

субъектом в соответствующем правовом акте [10, с.9-12].

В целом, следственные и процессуальные ошибки могут привести к неправильным выводам, искажению фактов и негативным последствиям для всех сторон, вовлеченных в уголовное дело. Поэтому важно, чтобы следователи и другие процессуальные органы прилагали все усилия для минимизации ошибок, проводили тщательное расследование и собирали достаточное количество доказательств перед принятием решений.

В уголовном процессе могут возникнуть различные группы судебных ошибок. Первая группа связана с односторонностью и неполнотой досудебного следствия или досудебного разбирательства. Это означает, что не все стороны дела были полноценно представлены или что некоторые аспекты дела не были достаточно исследованы перед переходом к судебному процессу. Вторая группа судебных ошибок связана с нарушениями уголовного-процессуального закона. Это могут быть ошибки, совершенные в процессе применения процессуальных норм и процедур, которые регулируют проведение уголовного разбирательства. Третья группа включает в себя ситуации, когда применяется уголовный закон, который не соответствует действительности. Это может произойти, например, когда закон содержит нечеткие или устаревшие формулировки, которые затрудняют его применение к конкретному делу.

Представляется, что единственным показателем, различающим существенные и несущественные нарушения уголовного процесса, являются юридические последствия приговора. Существенные нарушения происходят, когда эти нарушения приводят к лишению или ограничению прав и обязанностей участников процесса, которые гарантированы законом, и препятствуют принятию законного и обоснованного решения по уголовному делу.

Вопрос о существенности нарушений закона, которые возникли в процессе судебного разбирательства, рассматривается субъектами процесса. Они могут обратиться в суд с жалобой на нарушения и запросить их устранение. Кроме того, сам суд также может самостоятельно обнаружить и исправить нарушения, допущенные прокурором, следователем или судьей в процессе уголовного дела.

Возможные судебные ошибки, связанные с ошибками следователя, могут включать следующее:

1. Неправильное сбор и представление доказательств. Следователь может допустить ошибки при сборе или представлении доказательств, что может привести к искажению

фактов дела. Например, может быть применено насилие или угрозы в отношении подозреваемого для получения показаний, что делает эти доказательства недопустимыми.

2. Неправильная идентификация подозреваемого. Следователь может ошибочно идентифицировать подозреваемого на основе неправильной информации или свидетельских показаний. Это может привести к обвинению невиновного человека.

3. Подделка или уничтожение доказательств. Следователь может умышленно подделать или уничтожить доказательства, чтобы подкрепить обвинение. Это является серьезным нарушением закона и может привести к судебным ошибкам.

4. Нарушение прав подозреваемого. Следователь может нарушить права подозреваемого в ходе расследования, например, не обеспечить адекватную защиту, не предоставить доступ к адвокату или применить незаконные методы допроса.

5. Недостаточное расследование. Следователь может не провести достаточное расследование, пропустить важные доказательства или свидетелей, что может привести к ошибочному выводу о виновности подозреваемого.

Когда такие ошибки происходят, судья может принять неправильное решение на основе представленных доказательств. Однако, в некоторых случаях подсудимый может отказаться от своих прежних показаний, заявив о применении к нему угроз и насилия при получении доказательств. В этом случае, суд может принять во внимание такие заявления и пересмотреть представленные доказательства. Если будет установлено, что доказательства были получены с использованием незаконных методов или средств, они могут быть признаны недопустимыми и исключены из рассмотрения дела.

Важно отметить, что приведенные выше ситуации являются лишь примерами возможных судебных ошибок, связанных с ошибками следователя. Конечное решение о виновности или невиновности подсудимого принимает суд, и в каждом конкретном случае необходимо учитывать все обстоятельства и доказательства.

Процесс уголовного судопроизводства, связанного с изменением показаний подсудимого, судья может рассматривать как попытку подсудимого избежать уголовной ответственности. В таких случаях суд может принять решение отложить разбирательство и поручить органу досудебного расследования провести дополнительные следственные действия для установления истинного положения дела.

По ходатайству стороны уголовного процесса, суд вправе поручить проведение



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 6.317  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.771  
SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

следственных действий органу досудебного расследования. Это может включать допрос свидетелей, экспертизы или сбор других доказательств. После получения заключения о результатах проверки, судья принимает решение о дальнейшем ходе дела, в том числе о вынесении приговора.

Однако следует отметить, что конкретные процедуры и правила могут различаться в разных юрисдикциях. Уголовные процессы могут иметь свои особенности в зависимости от страны или региона. Поэтому важно обращаться к местным законам и правилам судопроизводства для получения более точной информации о конкретном случае.

Знание типичных ошибок следствия и обвинения может помочь судье в обнаружении и исправлении своих собственных ошибок, а также в принятии мер по предотвращению или устранению ошибок следствия. Это позволяет повысить эффективность работы суда и обеспечить объективное и справедливое разбирательство уголовных дел. Знание ошибок следствия помогает судье осуществлять контроль за правильностью соблюдения процессуальных норм и требований, а также учитывать эти ошибки при оценке доказательств и принятии решений. Если судья знает о типичных ошибках, совершаемых следователями, он может обращать на них внимание и требовать дополнительных объяснений или доказательств от сторон дела. Это способствует выявлению недостатков в доказательствах и исключению ошибочных или

неправомерно полученных доказательств из материалов дела.

Кроме того, судья может применять меры профилактики, чтобы предотвратить возникновение ошибок и обеспечить соблюдение процессуальных правил. Например, судья может проводить предварительные слушания для проверки законности и допустимости доказательств, а также для выявления возможных ошибок и проблем в проведении следствия. Также судья может требовать дополнительной проверки или экспертизы определенных фактов или доказательств, если есть основания полагать, что они могут быть ошибочными или неполными.

Важно отметить, что суд должен добывать недостающие доказательства не самостоятельно, а при помощи сторон дела. Судебное разбирательство является противостоянием между обвинением и защитой, и каждая сторона должна представлять свои доказательства и аргументы. Судья должен обеспечивать равноправие сторон и побуждать их активно участвовать в процессе сбора доказательств. Только таким образом суд сможет сохранить объективность и независимость и принять законное и обоснованное решение.

В целом, знание ошибок следствия и обвинения является важным инструментом для судьи, который позволяет ему более точно и справедливо разбирать уголовные дела, исправлять ошибки и обеспечивать соблюдение законности в процессе судебного разбирательства.

## References:

1. (2021). *Criminal Procedure Code of the Kyrgyz Republic*. – Bishkek.
2. Pobedkin, A.V., & Burtsev, S.N. (2010). *Violations of criminal procedural norms in the activities of bodies of inquiry, means of their prevention and elimination*. (p.230). Moscow.
3. Granat, N.L. (2011). *Investigative errors: the concept, types and causes*. Scientific information on the fight against crime. (pp.57-59). Moscow.
4. Terekhova, L.A. (2006). *Correction of judicial errors as a component of judicial protection*. (p.247). Omsk.
5. Dzhorobekov, Zh.M. (2020). Some theoretical and practical aspects of the investigation of extremist crimes. *Science, new technologies and innovations of Kyrgyzstan*, No. 4, pp.206-209.
6. (2022). *Criminal procedure of the Kyrgyz Republic*. The general part. Short course. (p.92). Bishkek.
7. Aubakirova, A.A. (2010). *Investigative and expert errors in the formation of internal beliefs: Abstract. diss...doctors of law.Sciences*, (p.44). Chelyabinsk.
8. Kokoeva, A.M., Djorobekova, A.M., & Nuriev, D.S. (2018). Interaction of the investigator and the operative in the investigation of crimes committed in the field of economic activity. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, No.11 (67), 271-275.
9. Faleev, V.I. (2002). *Criminal procedural aspects of identification and elimination of judicial errors: Dis...Candidate of Legal Sciences*. (p.171). Kaliningrad.
10. Berdaliyev, K.Ch., Dzhorobekova, A.M., & Dzhorobekov, Zh.M. (2018). Correlation of the law enforcement function with other functions of the state: mutual influence and interdependence. *Trends in the development of science and education*, No. 43-1, pp. 9-12.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

## Contents

	p.
14. <b>Mamurov, D. E.</b> To the problem of selecting methods of innovation activity support.	101-106
15. <b>Boydadaev, A.</b> Irrational philosophy in the context of the synthesis of east and west.	107-111
16. <b>Shevchenko, A. V., &amp; Dzhorobekov, T. M.</b> On the reasons for errors in criminal proceedings.	112-115
17. <b>Jabbarova, N., Magerramova, L., &amp; Kurbanova, A.</b> New organic reagents for the extraction of nickel (II) picrate from the solid phase.	116-120
18. <b>Nakhutsrishvili, E., Dzamiashvili, E., &amp; Shashviashvili, K.</b> Differentiation of the Grammatical Category of Voice in English and Georgian Languages.	121-125
19. <b>Tukhtabaev, J. Sh., &amp; Soatalieva, N. I.</b> The importance and necessity of ensuring food safety.	126-130
20. <b>Kamalov, U. A.</b> Desirable sentences in Uzbek.	131-136
21. <b>Arapov, G. N.</b> Interpretation of the light industry lexicon in modern linguistics.	137-141
22. <b>Blagorodov, A. A., Prokhorov, V. T., Tikhonova, N. V., &amp; Volkova, G. Yu.</b> Small and medium enterprises (SMEs) - the basis for successful socio-economic development of the arctic regions of the Russian Federation within the Northern Sea route. Message 1 Republic of Karelia.	142-171
23. <b>Blagorodov, A. A., Prokhorov, V. T., Tikhonova, N. V., &amp; Volkova, G. Yu.</b> Small and medium enterprises (SMEs) - the basis for successful socio-economic development of the arctic regions of the Russian Federation within the Northern Sea route. Message 2 Murmansk region.	172-188
24. <b>Shevchenko, A. V., Dzhorobekov, T. M., &amp; Kokoeva, A. M.</b> Negative consequences of investigative and procedural errors.	189-192

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



### Scientific publication

«ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, USA» - Международный научный журнал зарегистрированный во Франции, и выходящий в электронном и печатном формате. **Препринт** журнала публикуется на сайте по мере поступления статей.

Все поданные авторами статьи в течении 1-го дня размещаются на сайте <http://T-Science.org>.

Печатный экземпляр рассылается авторам в течение 3 дней после 30 числа каждого месяца.

### Импакт фактор журнала

Impact Factor	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022
JIF		1.500								
ISRA (India)		1.344				3.117	4.971		6.317	
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	0.307	0.829							1.582	
GIF (Australia)	0.356	0.453	0.564							
SIS (USA)	0.438	0.912								
РИИЦ (Russia)		0.179	0.224	0.207	0.156	0.126		3.939	0.671	
ESJI (KZ)		1.042	1.950	3.860	4.102	6.015	8.716	8.997	9.035	8.771
SJIF (Morocco)		2.031				5.667			7.184	
ICV (Poland)		6.630								
PIF (India)		1.619	1.940							
IBI (India)			4.260							
OAJI (USA)						0.350				

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	РИИЦ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Deadlines

	Steps of publication	Deadlines	
		min	max
1	Article delivered	-	
2	Plagiarism check	1 hour	2 hour
3	Review	1 day	30 days
4	Payment complete	-	
5	Publication of the article	1 day	5 days
	publication of the journal	30th of each month	
6	doi registration	before publication	
7	Publication of the journal	1 day	2 days
8	Shipping journals to authors	3 days	7 days
9	Database registration	5 days	6 months

### INDEXING METADATA OF ARTICLES IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:



**International Scientific Indexing ISI (Dubai, UAE)**  
<http://isindexing.com/isi/journaldetails.php?id=327>



**Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, EndNote (USA)**  
<https://www.myendnoteweb.com/EndNoteWeb.html>



**Research Bible (Japan)**  
<http://journalseeker.researchbib.com/?action=viewJournalDetails&issn=23084944&uid=rd1775>



**Scientific Object Identifier (SOI)**  
<http://s-o-i.org/>



**РИИЦ (Russia)**  
<http://elibrary.ru/contents.asp?issueid=1246197>



**Google Scholar (USA)**  
[http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as\\_sdt=0%2C5](http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as_sdt=0%2C5)



**Turk Egitim Indeksi (Turkey)**  
<http://www.turkegitimindeksi.com/Journals.aspx?ID=149>



**Directory of abstract indexing for Journals**  
<http://www.daij.org/journal-detail.php?jid=94>



**DOI (USA)** <http://www.doi.org>



**CrossRef (USA)** <http://doi.crossref.org>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	PIIHQ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



Open Academic Journals Index (Russia)  
<http://oaji.net/journal-detail.html?number=679>



Japan Link Center (Japan)  
<https://japanlinkcenter.org>



Kudos Innovations, Ltd. (USA)  
<https://www.growkudos.com>



AcademicKeys (Connecticut, USA)  
[http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour\\_main.php](http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour_main.php)



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ResearcherID (USA)  
<http://www.researcherid.com/rid/N-7988-2013>



RedLink (Canada)  
<https://www.redlink.com/>



TDNet  
 Library & Information Center Solutions (USA)  
<http://www.tdnet.io/>



RefME (USA & UK)  
<https://www.refme.com>



Collective IP (USA)  
<https://www.collectiveip.com/>



PFTS Europe/Rebus:list (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.rebuslist.com>



Korean Federation of Science and Technology Societies (Korea)  
<http://www.kofst.or.kr>



Sherpa Romeo (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/search.php?source=journal&sourceid=28772>



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ORCID (USA)  
<http://orcid.org/0000-0002-7689-4157>



Yewno (USA & UK)  
<http://yewno.com/>



Stratified Medical Ltd. (London, United Kingdom)  
<http://www.stratifiedmedical.com/>

**THE SCIENTIFIC JOURNAL IS INDEXED IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:**



Advanced Sciences Index (Germany)  
<http://journal-index.org/>



SCIENTIFIC INDEXING SERVICE (USA)  
<http://sindex.org/JournalList.aspx?ID=202>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 6.317	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582	ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.771	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



**Global Impact Factor (Australia)**  
<http://globalimpactfactor.com/?type=issn&s=2308-4944&submit=Submit>



**CiteFactor (USA) Directory Indexing of International Research Journals**  
<http://www.citefactor.org/journal/index/11362/theoretical-applied-science>



**JIFACTOR**  
[http://www.jifactor.org/journal\\_view.php?journal\\_id=2073](http://www.jifactor.org/journal_view.php?journal_id=2073)



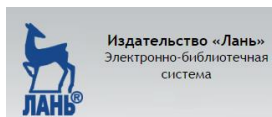
**Eurasian Scientific Journal Index (Kazakhstan)**  
<http://esjindex.org/search.php?id=1>



**SJIF Impact Factor (Morocco)**  
<http://sjifactor.inno-space.net/passport.php?id=18062>



**InfoBase Index (India)**  
<http://infobaseindex.com>



**Электронно-библиотечная система «Издательства «Лань» (Russia)**  
<http://e.lanbook.com/journal/>



**International Society for Research Activity (India)**  
<http://www.israjif.org/single.php?did=2308-4944>



**International Institute of Organized Research (India)**  
<http://www.i2or.com/indexed-journals.html>



**Journal Index**  
<http://journalindex.net/?qi=Theoretical+%26+Applied+Science>



**Open Access Journals**  
<http://www.oajournals.info/>



**Indian citation index (India)**  
<http://www.indiancitationindex.com/>



**Index Copernicus International (Warsaw, Poland)**  
<http://journals.indexcopernicus.com/masterlist.php?q=2308-4944>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>ПИИИ (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---



<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 6.317</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 1.582</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 3.939</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.771</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 7.184</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

---

Signed in print: 30.07.2023. Size 60x84  $\frac{1}{8}$

«Theoretical & Applied Science» (USA, Sweden, KZ)

Scientific publication. The circulation is 90 copies.

<http://T-Science.org> E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

---

Printed «Theoretical & Applied Science»